









**e:NY1**

As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   or   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 or  is colour-coded to indicate “danger” (red), “warning” (orange), or “caution” (amber).

 **Safety Labels** P. 101

## A Few Words About Safety


---

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

## **Event Data Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## **Service Diagnostic Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## **Digital Key**

For more information on Digital Key, please visit the URL below.  
*<https://hondanews.eu/eu/en/corporate/media/photos/69919/honda-motor-europe-bracknell-headquarters>*

## Owner's Manual Application Terms and Conditions\*

### General

This application allows your Display Audio to automatically search for owner's manual updates that are specific to your vehicle and Display Audio every time the power mode of the vehicle is set to ON. This application periodically transmits a limited amount of vehicle and device information to our servers: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Display Audio hardware serial number, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, transaction log (alerts for or views of updates, update downloads and installation, usage of the owner's manual application), etc. When the application finds an update from the server, it prompts you to download and install.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update the owner's manual. We will also maintain a log of the updates that are installed on our servers.

### Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the utility. (See the Honda website (<https://www.privacynotice.honda.eu>) for further details.)

\* Not available on all models

Honda collects, uses, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

Where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

- to deliver owner's manual updates to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the owner's manual application and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights. This includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the owner's manual, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the owner's manual.

Honda may share this data with Honda's world wide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.



## System Updates Terms and Conditions

### General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)\*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

### Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the application. See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver the system updates and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system updates products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

\* Not available on all models

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, and audio/information screen, meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

## ➤ Safe Driving P. 39

For Safe Driving P. 40

Seat Belts P. 45

Airbags P. 59

## ➤ Instrument Panel P. 103

Indicators P. 104

Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 137

## ➤ Controls P. 157

Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 158

Tailgate P. 171

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 190

Climate Control System P. 240

## ➤ Features P. 251

Audio System P. 252

Display Audio P. 254

Emergency Call (eCall) P. 366

## ➤ Driving P. 371

Before Driving P. 372

Towing a Trailer P. 376

When Driving P. 377

Multi-View Rear Camera\* P. 502

Multi-View Camera\* P. 504

## ➤ Maintenance P. 561

Before Performing Maintenance P. 562

Service Reminder System\* P. 566

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 593

Climate Control System Maintenance P. 611

## ➤ Handling the Unexpected P. 623

Tools P. 624

If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 625

Overheating P. 647

Indicator Coming On/Blinking P. 648

If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector P. 664

## ➤ Information P. 669

Specifications P. 670

Identification Numbers P. 672

# Contents

Child Safety P. 74

Safety Labels P. 101

Security System P. 182  
Mirrors P. 207

Windows P. 188  
Seats P. 210

Interior Convenience Items P. 221

Audio Error Messages P. 357

General Information on the Audio System P. 358

Honda Sensing P. 407  
Honda Parking Pilot\* P. 518

Braking P. 480  
Charging P. 544

Parking Your Vehicle P. 490  
Energy Economy P. 560

Maintenance Schedule\* P. 571  
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 598  
Cleaning P. 614

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 574  
12-Volt Battery P. 604  
Accessories and Modifications P. 621

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 590  
Remote Transmitter Care P. 609

Handling of the Jack P. 638  
Fuses P. 656  
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 666

Power System Won't Start P. 639  
Emergency Towing P. 662

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 644  
If You Cannot Open the Charge Lid P. 663

Devices that Emit Radio Waves\* P. 673

Open Source Licences P. 684

Quick Reference Guide P. 6

Safe Driving P. 39

Instrument Panel P. 103

Controls P. 157

Features P. 251

Driving P. 371

Maintenance P. 561

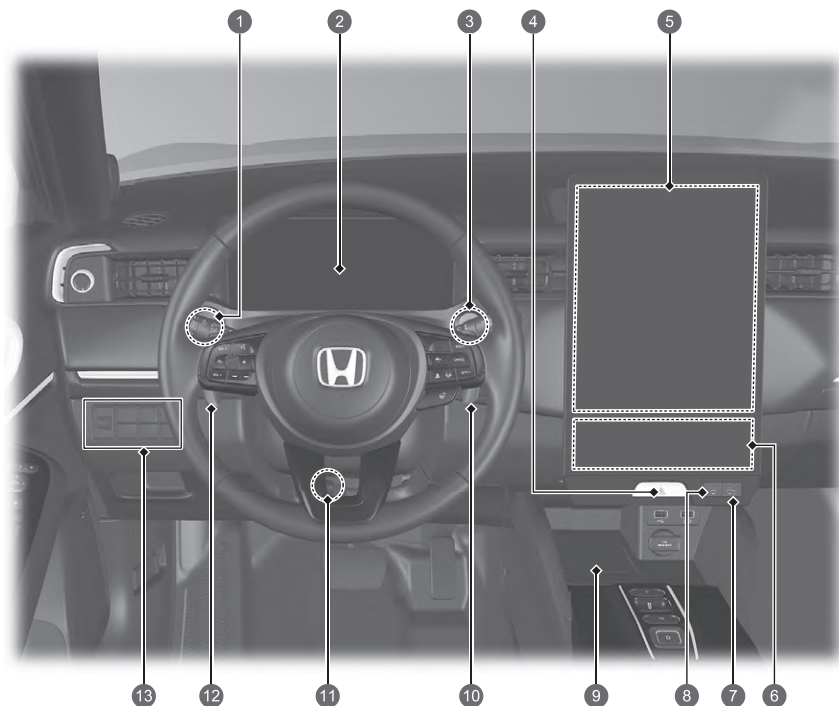
Handling the Unexpected P. 623

Information P. 669

Index P. 685

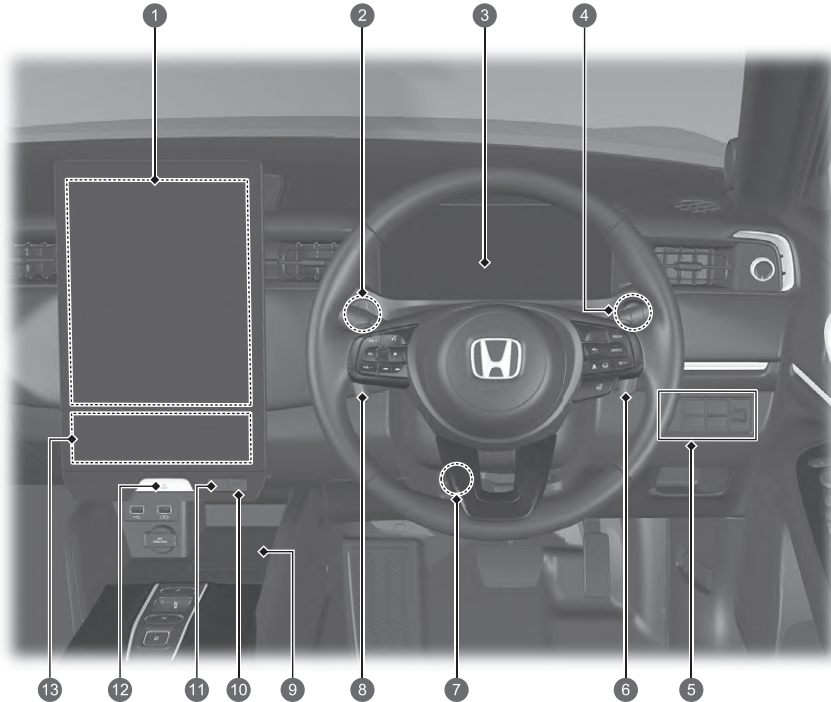
# Visual Index









Left-hand drive type



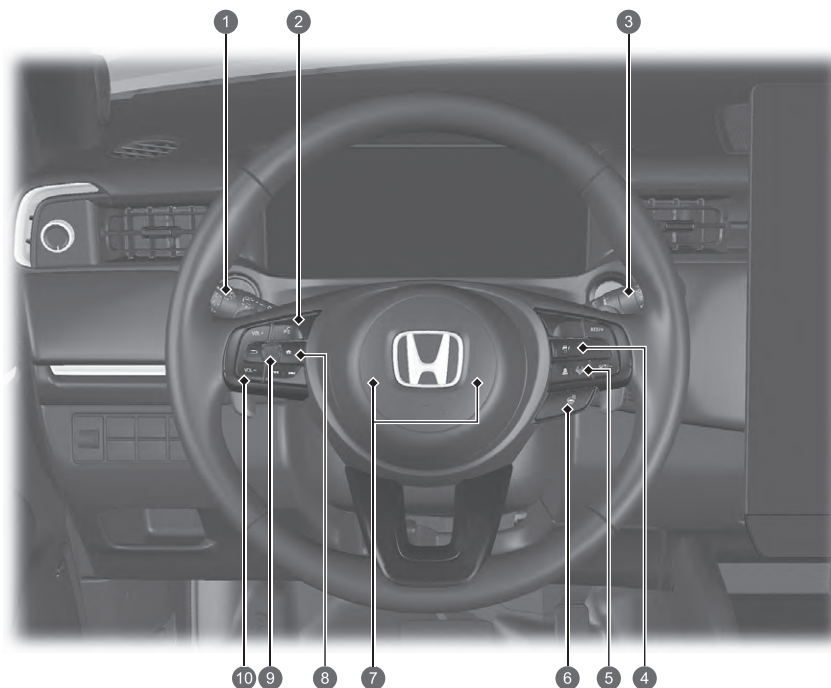
- 1 **Brightness Control** ➔ P. 205
- 2 **System Indicators** ➔ P. 104
- 3 **Gauges** ➔ P. 137
- 4 **Driver Information Interface** ➔ P. 139
- 5 **POWER Button** ➔ P. 190
- 6 **Hazard Warning Button**
- 7 **Audio System** ➔ P. 252
- 8 **Climate Control System** ➔ P. 240
- 9 **Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button** ➔ P. 204
- 10 **Windscreen Demister Button** ➔ P. 244
- 11 **Wireless Charger** ➔ P. 233
- 12 **Deceleration Paddle Selector +** ➔ P. 388
- 13 **Steering Wheel Adjustments** ➔ P. 206
- 14 **Deceleration Paddle Selector -** ➔ P. 388
- 15 **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** ➔ P. 396
- 16 **Parking Sensor System Button** ➔ P. 492
- 17 **Headlight Adjuster** ➔ P. 197
- 18 **Power Tailgate Button\*** ➔ P. 177
- 19 **Charge Lid Release Button** ➔ P. 548

Right-hand drive type



- ① Audio System ➔ P.252
- ② Brightness Control ➔ P.205
- ③ System Indicators ➔ P.104  
Gauges ➔ P.137  
Driver Information Interface ➔ P.139
- ④ POWER Button ➔ P.190
- ⑤  (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button ➔ P.396  
 Parking Sensor System Button ➔ P.492  
 Headlight Adjuster ➔ P.197  
 Power Tailgate Button\* ➔ P.177  
 Charge Lid Release Button ➔ P.548
- ⑥ Deceleration Paddle Selector (+) ➔ P.388
- ⑦ Steering Wheel Adjustments ➔ P.206
- ⑧ Deceleration Paddle Selector (-) ➔ P.388
- ⑨ Wireless Charger ➔ P.233
- ⑩  Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button ➔ P.204
- ⑪  Windscreen Demister Button ➔ P.244
- ⑫  Hazard Warning Button
- ⑬ Climate Control System ➔ P.240

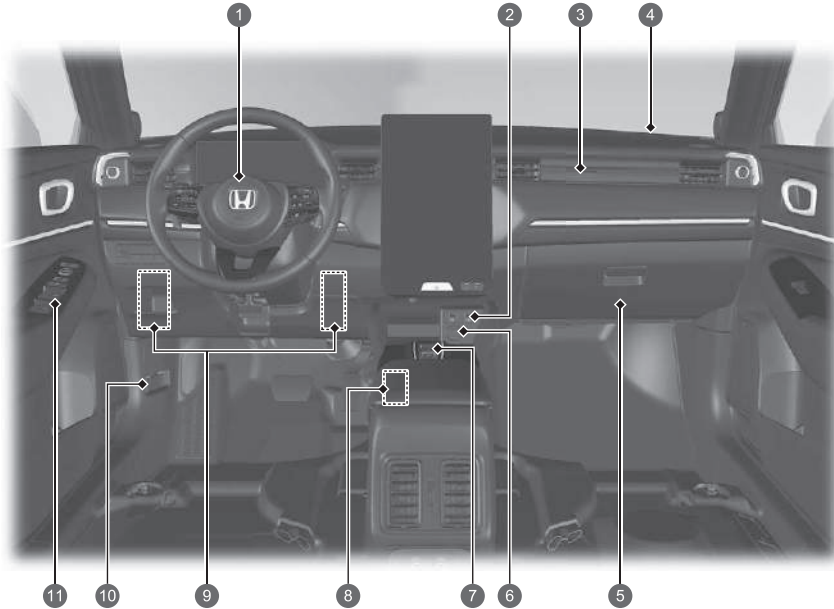
# Visual Index




- 1  **Headlights** /  **Turn Signals**  
➔ P. 192, 193
- 2  **Front Fog Lights** ➔ P. 195
- 3  **Rear Fog Light** ➔ P. 195
- 4  **CAMERA Button\*** ➔ P. 505
- 5 **Hands-Free Telephone System Buttons**  
➔ P. 341
- 6 **Voice Control Buttons** ➔ P. 262
- 7  **Wipers/Washers** ➔ P. 201
- 8  **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons** ➔ P. 408, 426
- 9  **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button** ➔ P. 408, 445
- 10  **Interval Button** ➔ P. 408, 436
- 11  **Heated Steering Wheel Button\***  
➔ P. 236
- 12 **Horn (Press an area around )**
- 13  **(Home) Button** ➔ P. 139, 258
- 14  **Left Selector Wheel** ➔ P. 139, 258
- 15 **Audio Remote Controls** ➔ P. 258

\*1: On-board diagnostics

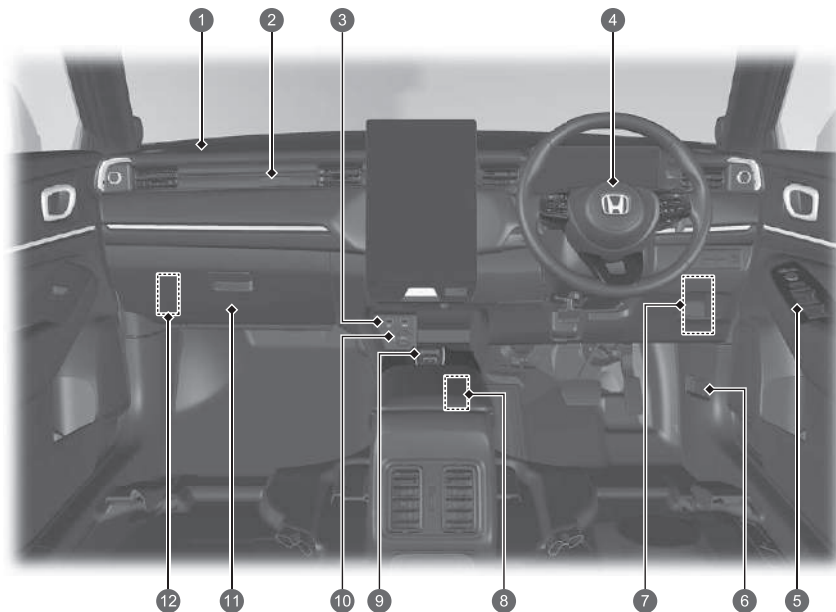
Left-hand drive type




- 1 Driver's Front Airbag ➔ P.61
- 2 USB Ports ➔ P.256
- 3 Passenger's Front Airbag OFF Indicator ➔ P.64
- 4 Passenger's Front Airbag ➔ P.61
- 5 Glove Box ➔ P.224
- 6 Accessory Power Socket ➔ P.232
- 7 Shift Button ➔ P.382
- 8 Drive Mode Switch ➔ P.391
- Electric Parking Brake Switch ➔ P.377
- Automatic Brake Hold Button ➔ P.484
-  Honda Parking Pilot Switch\* ➔ P.518
- 9 Interior Fuse Boxes ➔ P.658
- 10 Bonnet Release Handle ➔ P.575
- 11 Door Mirror Controls ➔ P.208
- Master Door Lock Switch ➔ P.169
- Power Window Switches ➔ P.188

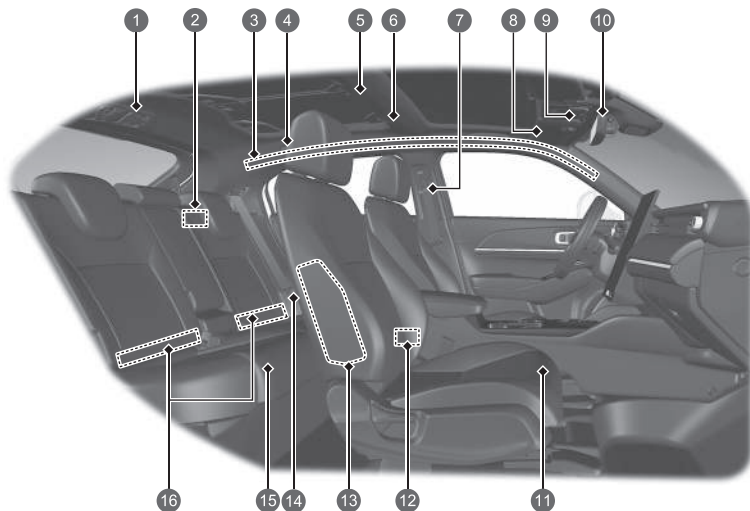
# Visual Index

Right-hand drive type



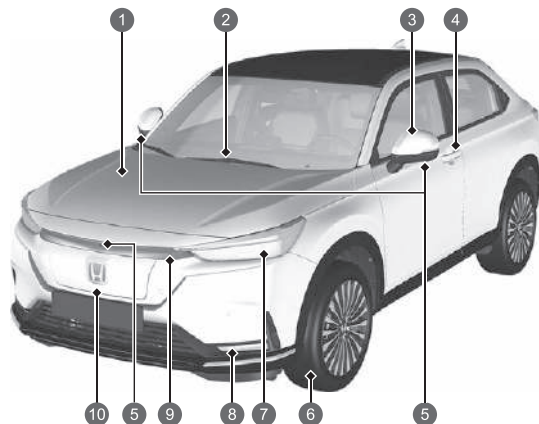
- 1 Passenger's Front Airbag ➔ P.61
- 2 Passenger's Front Airbag OFF Indicator ➔ P.64
- 3 USB Ports ➔ P.256
- 4 Driver's Front Airbag ➔ P.61
- 5 Door Mirror Controls ➔ P.208  
Master Door Lock Switch ➔ P.169  
Power Window Switches ➔ P.188
- 6 Bonnet Release Handle ➔ P.575
- 7 Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box ➔ P.658
- 8 Drive Mode Switch ➔ P.391  
Electric Parking Brake Switch ➔ P.377  
Automatic Brake Hold Button ➔ P.484  
 Honda Parking Pilot Switch\* ➔ P.518
- 9 Shift Button ➔ P.382
- 10 Accessory Power Socket ➔ P.232
- 11 Glove Box ➔ P.224
- 12 Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box ➔ P.660



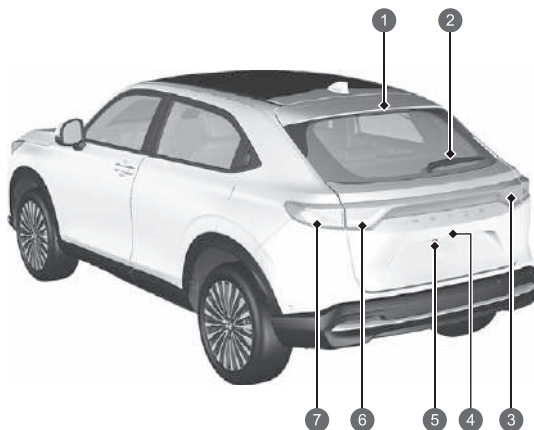


- 1 Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage  
➔ P. 54
- 2 Luggage Area Lights ➔ P. 223
- 3 Side Curtain Airbags ➔ P. 69
- 4 Grab Handle  
Coat Hooks ➔ P. 226
- 5 Ceiling Light\* ➔ P. 221
- 6 Map Lights\* ➔ P. 222
- 7 Seat Belts ➔ P. 45
- 8 Sun Visors ➔ P. 239  
Vanity Mirrors
- 9 Map Lights ➔ P. 222  
Ceiling Light ➔ P. 221  
SOS Button ➔ P. 368  
Ultrasonic/Tilt Sensor OFF Button\*  
➔ P. 185
- 10 Rearview Mirror ➔ P. 207
- 11 Front Seat ➔ P. 210
- 12 USB Ports ➔ P. 257
- 13 Side Airbags ➔ P. 67
- 14 Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System) ➔ P. 94  
Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System ➔ P. 96
- 15 Rear Seat ➔ P. 214
- 16 Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint Systems ➔ P. 90

# Visual Index



- 1 Maintenance Under the Bonnet ➔ P. 574
- 2 Windscreen Wipers ➔ P. 201
- 3 Power Door Mirrors ➔ P. 208  
Side Turn Signal Lights ➔ P. 590
- 4 Door Lock/Unlock Control ➔ P. 161
- 5 Multi-View Camera\* ➔ P. 504
- 6 Tyres ➔ P. 598, 625
- 7 Headlights ➔ P. 192, 590  
Position/Daytime Running Lights  
➔ P. 192, 196, 590  
Front Turn Signal Lights ➔ P. 193, 590
- 8 Front Fog Lights ➔ P. 195, 590
- 9 Lid Open Button ➔ P. 548
- 10 How to Charge ➔ P. 544



- 1 High-Mount Brake Light ➔ P. 591
- 2 Rear Wiper ➔ P. 203
- 3 Taillights ➔ P. 590, 591
  - Back-Up Light (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 591
  - Rear Fog Light (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 195, 591
- 4 Opening/Closing the Tailgate ➔ P. 171
  - Tailgate Outer Handle ➔ P. 172
  - Rear Licence Plate Light ➔ P. 591
- 5 Multi-View Rear Camera\* ➔ P. 502
  - Multi-View Camera\* ➔ P. 504
- 6 Taillights ➔ P. 590, 591
  - Rear Fog Light (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 195, 591
  - Back-Up Light (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 591
- 7 Brake/Taillights ➔ P. 590, 591
  - Rear Turn Signal Lights ➔ P. 193, 591

# Making Good Use of Your Honda Electric Vehicle

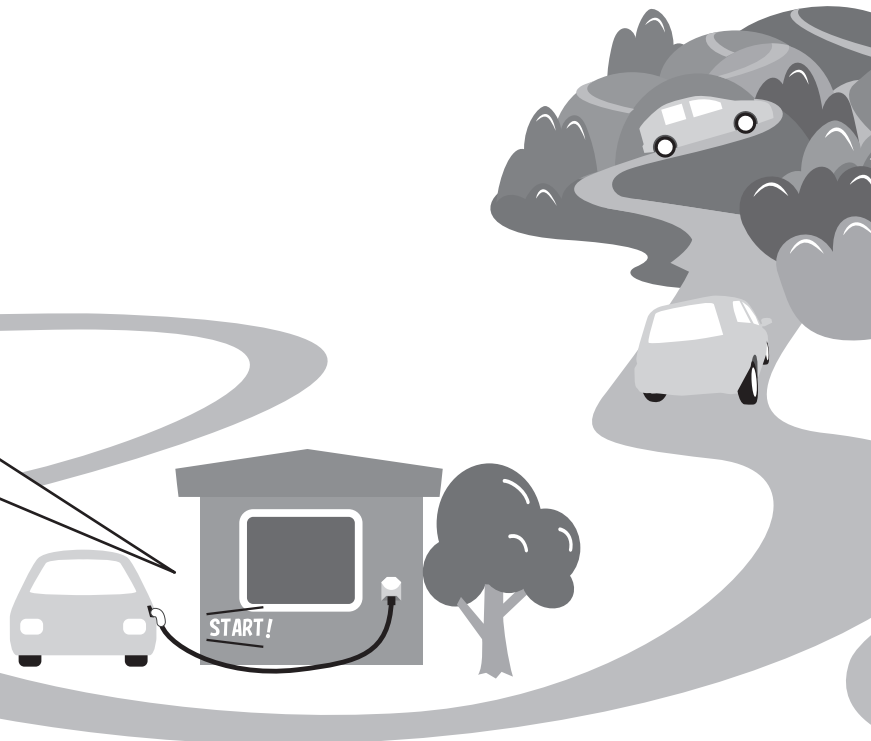


## Charging at Home

Your Honda electric vehicle can be charged with an appropriately configured household outlet. If a timer has been set, charging automatically starts and ends.

➔ P. 544

➔ P. 554





### Parking

There are several things you need to know when parking your Honda electric vehicle.

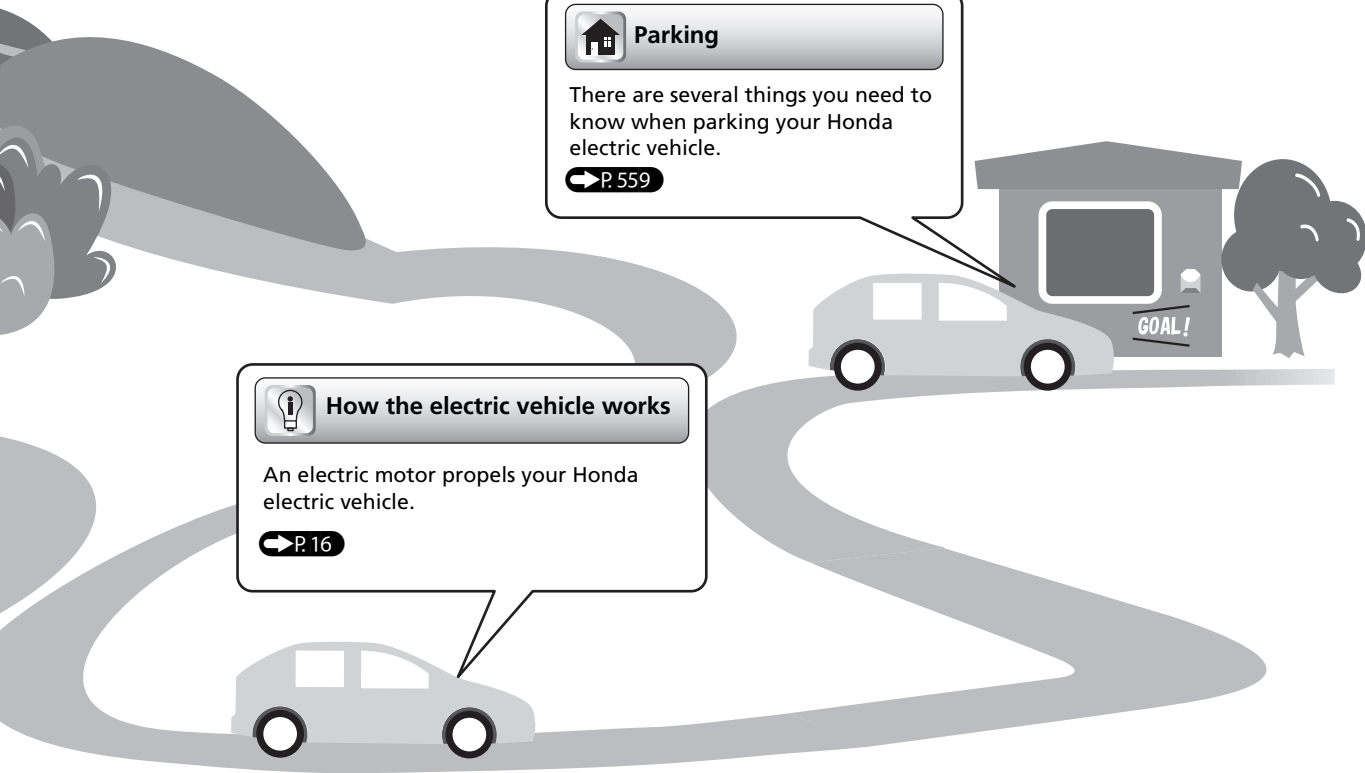
➔ P. 559



### How the electric vehicle works

An electric motor propels your Honda electric vehicle.

➔ P. 16



# How the Electric Vehicle Works

Instead of using petrol to power an internal combustion engine, your vehicle uses stored electricity to power an electric propulsion motor. As with a petrol powered vehicle, the efficiency of an electric vehicle (and the vehicle's range) is most impacted by the driver's driving style. Climate control system usage also has a strong impact with heavy usage negatively affecting the vehicle's range. There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle, a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems, and a high voltage lithium ion battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

## Charging the High Voltage Battery

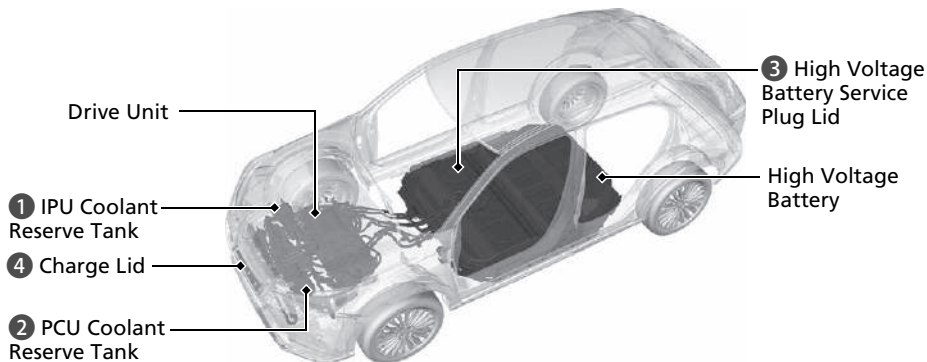
You can recharge the High Voltage battery using a standard household outlet or at a public charging station.

➔ P. 544

# Electric Vehicle Precautions

## High Voltage Components, High Voltage Cables and High Temperature Components

Electric vehicles have high voltage components (about 408V maximum) such as the High Voltage battery, high voltage cables (identified by their orange covers), drive unit, and high temperature parts such as the radiator. Labels with handling warnings are attached to these components.



**⚠ WARNING**

This vehicle has high voltage circuits and parts. Failure to observe the following precautions can result in burns or electric shock.

- Do not remove, disassemble, or replace the high voltage parts, cables (orange) or their connectors.
- Never touch the High Voltage battery service plugs.

In an emergency or during maintenance or repair, the service plugs are removed to cut off the electric flow from the battery. These plugs are in contact with the battery and can cause severe electric shock if not handled properly.

Only a qualified technician should handle any electrical equipment. For inspection and repair, consult a dealer.

**Label**

1 IPU Coolant Reserve Tank	3 High Voltage Battery Service Plug Lid	4 Charge Lid
2 PCU Coolant Reserve Tank		

Labels for components 1, 2, 3, and 4 are shown below. Label 1 includes a high voltage warning, a hand symbol, and a pressure rating of 49kPa. Label 3 includes a high voltage warning, an information symbol, and a document icon with the number 81M-00. Label 4 includes a high voltage warning, an information symbol, and two hexagonal symbols labeled C and K.

## High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges when the vehicle is not in use. If allowed to discharge too much, the battery may become damaged.

If your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, during storage for example, periodically recharge the battery to maintain sufficient charge levels. At least once every three months, recharge the High Voltage battery.

Excessive heat can also damage the battery. On hot, sunny days, try to avoid parking your vehicle under direct sunlight.

If the High Voltage battery becomes fully discharged or damaged and you are unable to start the power system as a result, consult a dealer.

## Temperature

When storing the vehicle, make sure not to expose it to extremely low temperatures:

If the temperature of the High Voltage battery drops to  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  or below, the power system will not start. Wait for the High Voltage battery to warm up or move the vehicle to a warmer location. Note using the battery heating system will not help in this case.



## Maintenance, Repair, and Disposal

Always consult a dealer regarding maintenance, repair, and disposal.

High Voltage batteries that have been removed from disposed vehicles are collected through a dealer. Do not dispose of these batteries yourself.

## In Case of a Crash

- Be careful of electric shock hazard.
  - ▶ If a severe crash damaged your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.
- Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.
  - ▶ The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid any skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally touch it, flush your eyes or skin with a large quantity of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.
- Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.
  - ▶ Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.
- Anytime the vehicle is damaged in an accident, have it repaired by a dealer.

## Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

The emergency shutdown system may activate when the vehicle is impacted by a crash or a collision. When this system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and your vehicle no longer moves.

To return the High Voltage system to normal operation, consult a dealer.

### WARNING

High voltage parts and/or the cables (orange) connecting them may be exposed as a result of a crash. Stay clear of these parts as you may be electrocuted.

If High Voltage battery fluid leaks, be careful not to touch the fluid. It can harm your eyes and skin. If it comes in contact with your eyes and skin; flush the affected area with clean water immediately for a few minutes, and seek immediate medical attention.

# Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking

When decelerating or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle.

In the following situations, the vehicle generates electricity while decelerating.

- The accelerator pedal is released with the shift position in **[D]**.
- The brake pedal is depressed with the shift position in **[D]**.
  - ▶ When the High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold/hot, or another factor or factors are affecting the condition of the battery, the regenerative braking system may not be activated.
- The deceleration paddle selector is used with the shift position in **[D]**.
  - ▶ You can control the rate of deceleration by using the deceleration paddle selector.

# Safe Driving P.39

## Airbags P.59

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

## Child Safety P.74

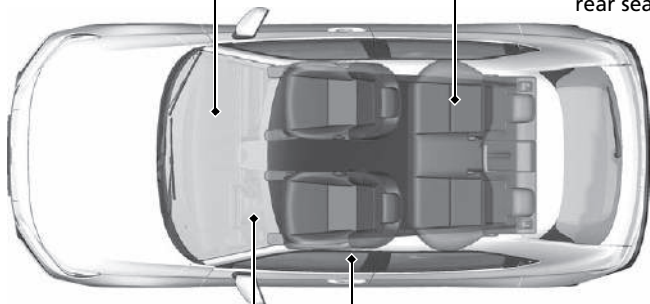
- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

## Seat Belts P.45

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

## Before Driving Checklist P.44

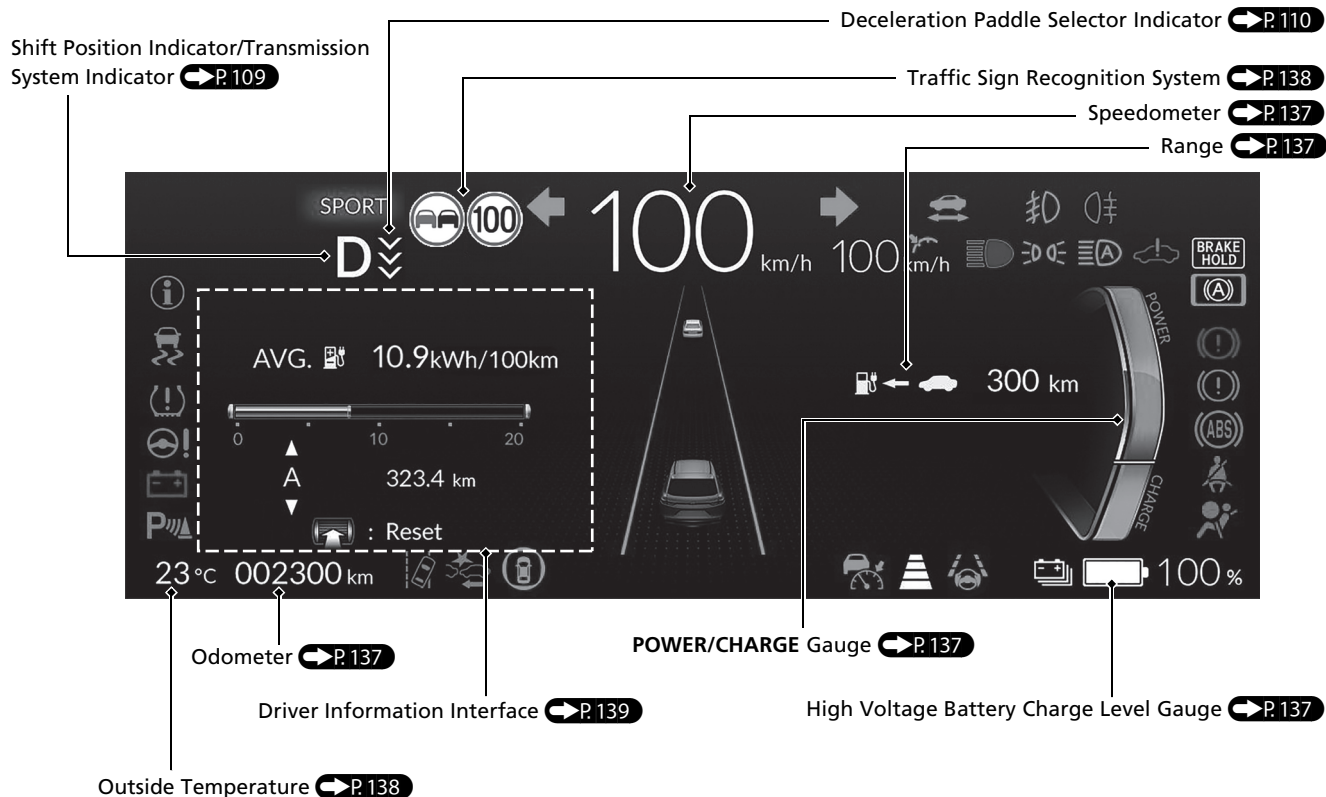
- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

# Instrument Panel [P.103](#)

## Indicators [P.104](#) / Gauges [P.137](#) / Driver Information Interface [P.139](#)



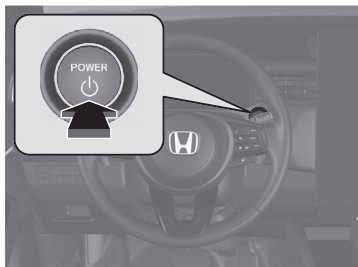
# Controls P.157

## Clock P.273

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

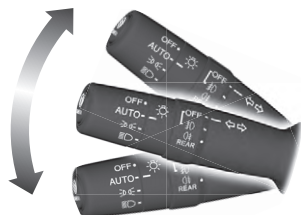
## POWER Button P.190

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



## Turn Signals P.193

Turn Signal Control Lever



## Lights P.192

Light Control Switches

High Beam

Low Beam

Flashing the high beams



## Wipers and Washers P.201

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

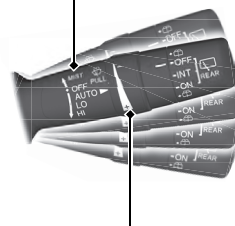
**MIST**

**OFF**

**AUTO:** Wiper speed varies automatically


**LO:** Low speed wipe


**HI:** High speed wipe



Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.

Adjustment Ring

: Low sensitivity

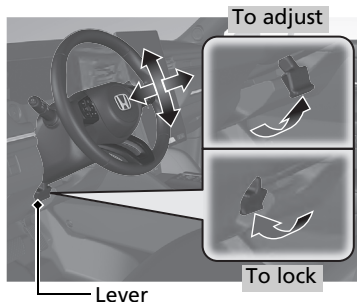
: High sensitivity

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

## Steering Wheel P.206

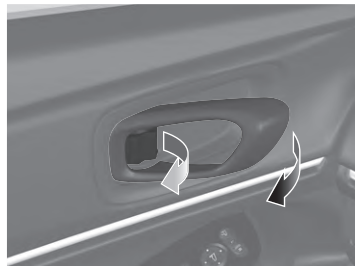
- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



## Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

 P.168

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

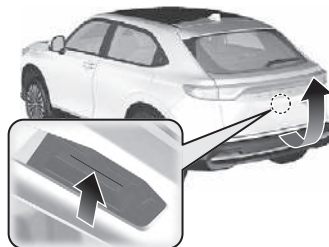


## Tailgate P.171

- Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote on you.

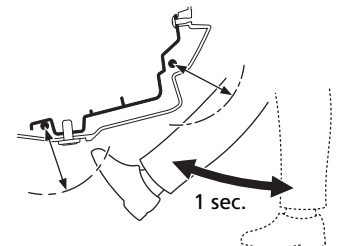
**Models with power tailgate**

- Press the power tailgate button on the driver's side control panel.
- Press the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter.



**Models with power tailgate**

With the keyless remote on you, raise and lower your foot (in a kicking motion) under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the tailgate.

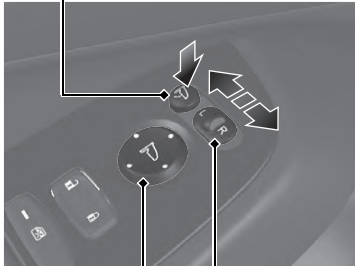


## Power Door Mirrors

➔ P.208

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding door mirror button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Folding Door Mirror Button



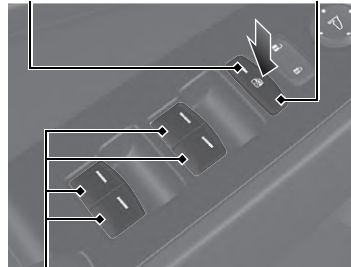
Adjustment Switch

Selector Switch

## Power Windows ➔ P.188



- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

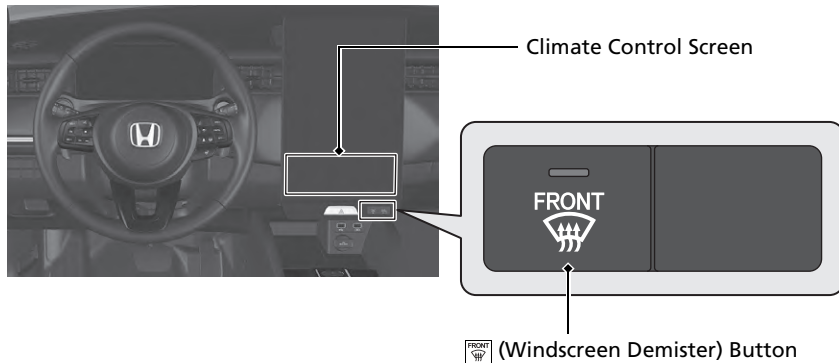
Indicator Power Window Lock Button



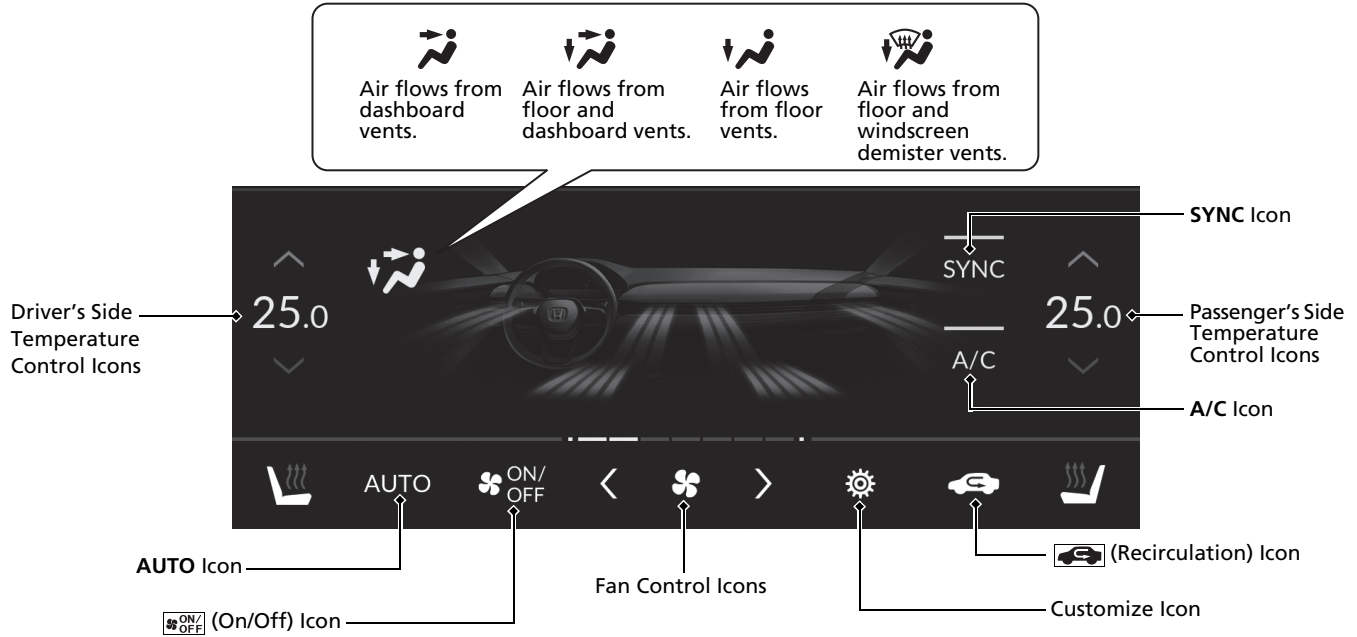
Window Switch

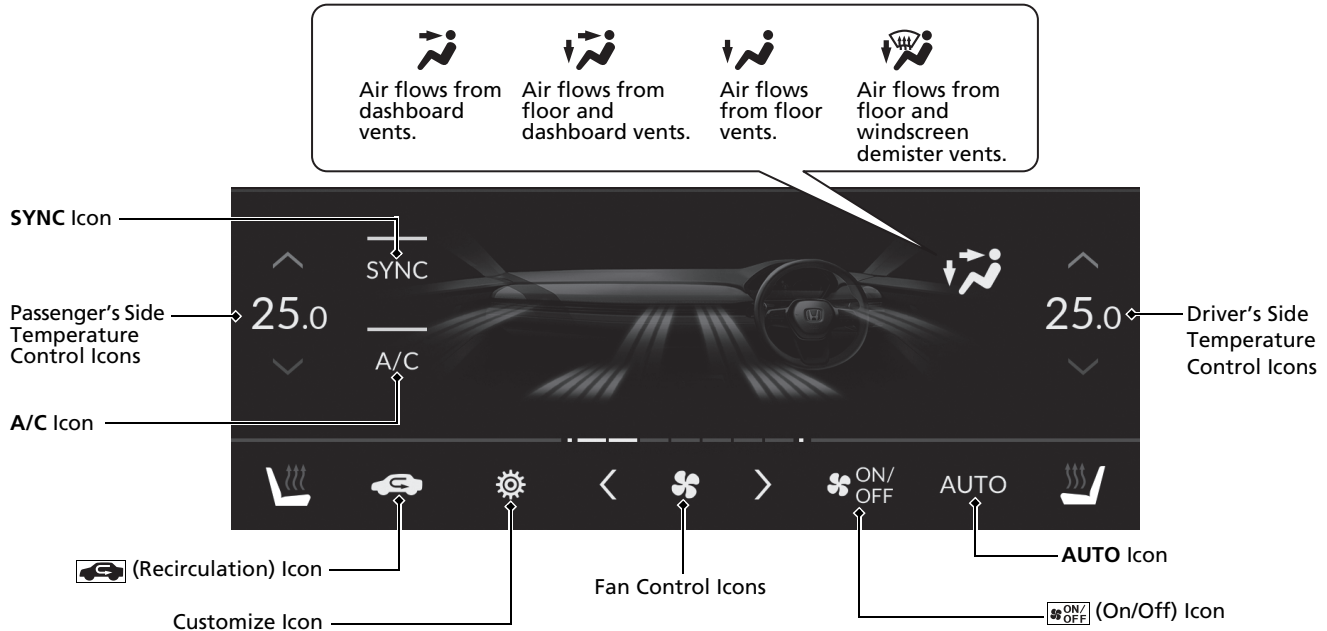
## Climate Control System P.240

- Select the **AUTO** icon to activate the climate control system.
- Select the  icon to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.



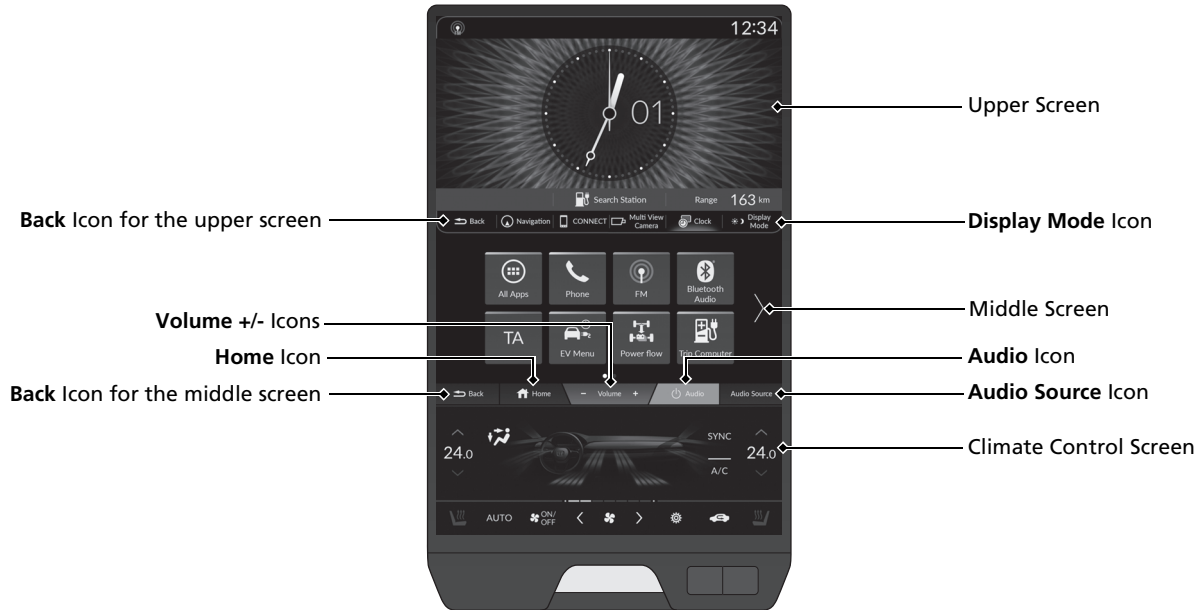






# Features P. 251

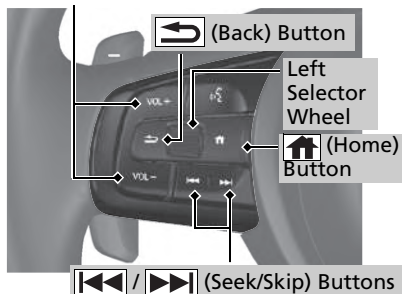
## Audio System P. 252



## Audio Remote Controls

➔ P. 258

**VOL+**/**VOL-** (Volume) Buttons



- **VOL+**/**VOL-** (Volume) Buttons  
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **Left Selector Wheel**  
When selecting the audio mode  
Press the **(Home)** button, then roll up or down to select **(audio)** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

**Roll up or down:** To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

FM/DAB/iPod/USB/*Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Audio/Apps (Apple CarPlay/Android Auto)

Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

- **(Seek/Skip) Buttons**  
Radio: Press **(Seek/Skip)** to change the preset radio station.  
Press and hold **(Seek/Skip)** to change the strong station.  
iPod, USB drive, *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Audio or Smartphone Connection:  
Press **(Seek/Skip)** to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.  
USB drive:  
Press and hold **(Seek/Skip)** to change a folder.  
iPod: Press and hold **(Seek/Skip)** to change a song.

Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

# Driving P. 371

## Electronic Gear Selector P. 382

- Select **P** and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.

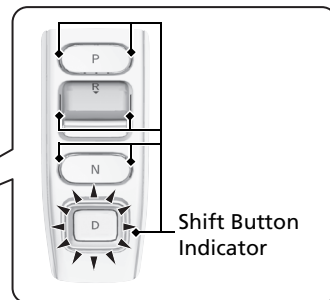
### Shift Operation

#### Shift Position Indicator

The shift position indicator and the shift button indicator indicate the current shift selection.



Shift Position Indicator



#### Park

Press the **P** button.

Used when parking or before turning the power on or off.



#### Reverse

Press back the **R** button.

Used when reversing.



#### Neutral

Press the **N** button.

Transmission is not locked.



#### Drive

Press the **D** button.

Used for normal driving.

**When in a mode other than SPORT mode**

The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.

**When SPORT mode is on**

The deceleration paddle selector can be used.

**Deceleration Paddle Selector** **P. 388**

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through three stages of deceleration.

Pull the selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

- **When in a mode other than SPORT mode**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.

- **When SPORT mode is ON**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the gauge.



Paddle Selector



Paddle Selector

When in a mode other than **SPORT** mode, the deceleration stage appears.



When **SPORT** mode is ON, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.

**VSA On and Off** **P. 396**

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you turn the power system on.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the (VSA OFF) button until you hear a beep.

**Deflation Warning System** **P. 398**

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you turn the power system on.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

**CMBS On and Off** **P. 415**

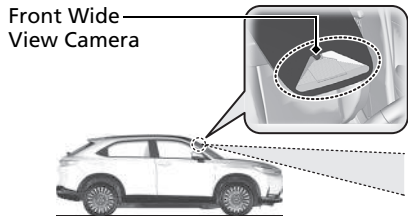
- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support of the driver information interface.

# Honda Sensing

➔ P. 407

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Front Wide View Camera



## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

➔ P. 411

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

➔ P. 424

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

➔ P. 441

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

## Traffic Jam Assist

➔ P. 453

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the front wide view camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

## Road Departure Mitigation System

➔ P. 463

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

## Traffic Sign Recognition System

➔ P. 471

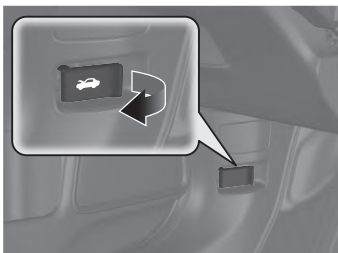
Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, and notifies you if your vehicle is exceeding the speed limit.

# Maintenance P.561

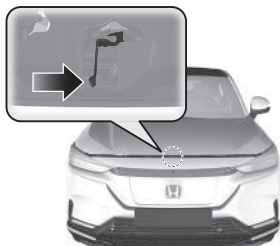
## Under the Bonnet P.574

- Check coolants and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.



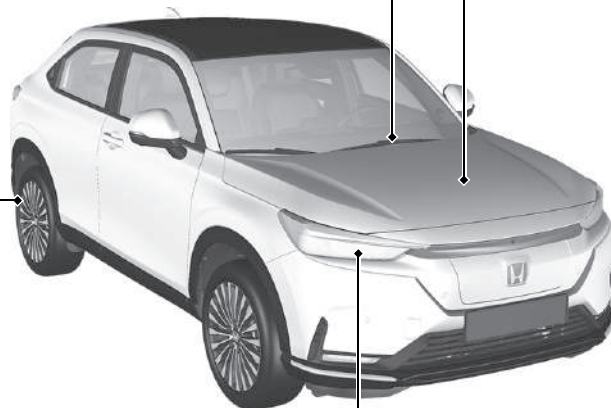
- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades P.593

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



## Tyres P.598

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

## Lights P.590

- Inspect all lights regularly.



# Handling the Unexpected P.623

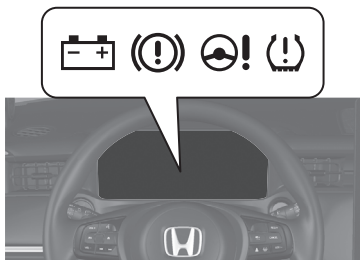
## Flat Tyre P.625

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.



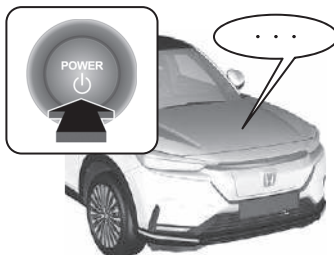
## Indicators Come On P.648

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



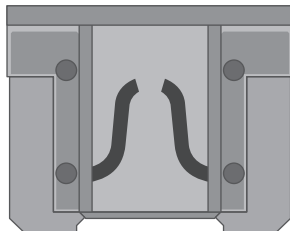
## Power System Won't Start P.639

- If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



## Blown Fuse P.656

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Overheating P.647

- Park in a safe location. Keep the power mode in ON, and let the power system cool down.

## Emergency Towing P.662

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# What to Do If

**Q** The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**. Why?

**A**

- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **POWER** button.



**Q** Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

**A** This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➤ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ➔ P.487

**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

**A** The beeper sounds when the driver, the front passenger, and/or the rear passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

---

**Q** Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?

**A** Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

---

**Q** I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

**A** The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

➤ Deflation Warning System ➔ P.398

---

**Q** Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

**A**

- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in **P** or **N**. If so, select any other position.

---



Why does the shift position automatically change to **P** when I open the driver's door to check for parking space lines when reversing?



- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Close the driver's door and manually change the shift position.
  - When opening the driver's door **P. 385**



Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?



The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

## For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	40
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	43
Safety Checklist .....	44

## Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts.....	45
Fastening a Seat Belt.....	51
Seat Belt Inspection.....	57
Anchorage Points.....	58

## Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	59
Types of Airbags .....	61

Front Airbags (SRS) .....	61
Side Airbags.....	67
Side Curtain Airbags.....	69
Airbag System Indicators.....	71
Airbag Care .....	73

## Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers .....	74
Safety of Infants and Small Children ....	77
Safety of Larger Children .....	98

## Safety Labels

Label Locations.....	101
----------------------	-----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### » Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

**■ Don't drink and drive**

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

**■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

**■ Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

**■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

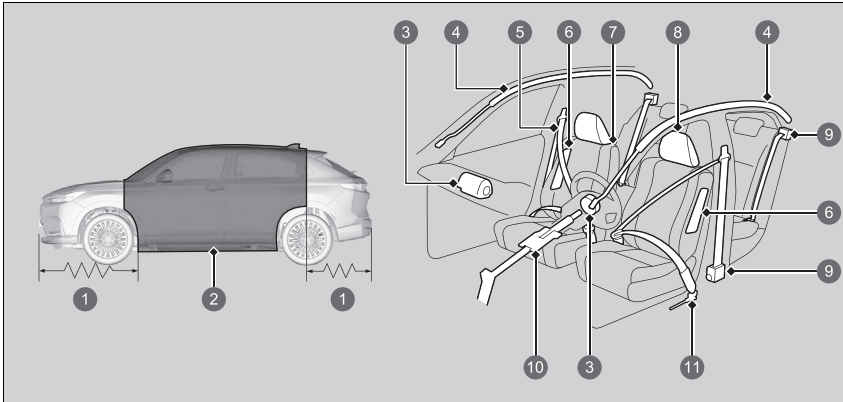
Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

■ **Handle high-voltage with care**

Familiarise yourself with the charging instructions and warnings supplied in this manual. If using a public charger, also observe the charging station manufacturer's instructions.



## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



- ❶ Crush Zones
- ❷ Safety Cage
- ❸ Front Airbags
- ❹ Side Curtain Airbags
- ❺ Seat Belts
- ❻ Side Airbags
- ❼ Seats and Seat-Backs
- ❽ Head Restraints
- ❾ Seat Belt Tensioners
- ❿ Collapsible Steering Column
- ⓫ Outer Lap Pretensioner

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

### ▣ Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and outer rear seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Safety Checklist

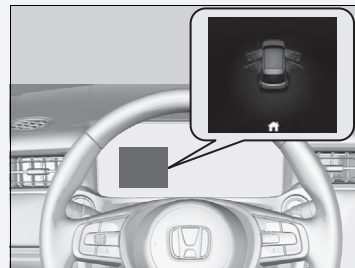
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive. Check if the charging cable is connected to the vehicle and disconnect it if it is. The vehicle will not operate with the cable connected.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  - **Seats** P. 210
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  - **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 217
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  - **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 51
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.
  - **Child Safety** P. 74

### ► Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

- **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 124



## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### ⓘ About Your Seat Belts

#### **WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**

**WARNING:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**WARNING:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

**WARNING:** Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

**WARNING:** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

### ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➤ **Child Safety** P. 74

### ➤ About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

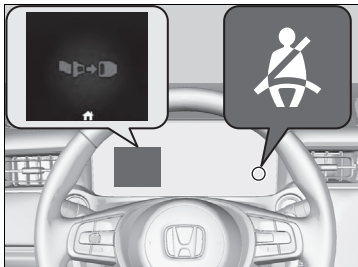
Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

**■ Proper use of seat belts**

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

## ■ Seat Belt Reminder



### ■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on. If the driver or front passenger does not fasten the belt, the indicator will remain on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

## ▶▶ Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

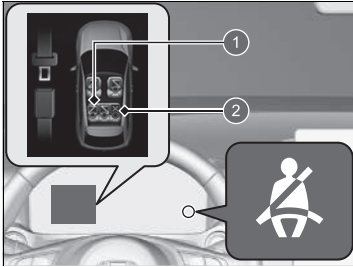
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.

Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



- ① Fastened
- ② Unfastened

### ■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are not used.

The display appears when:

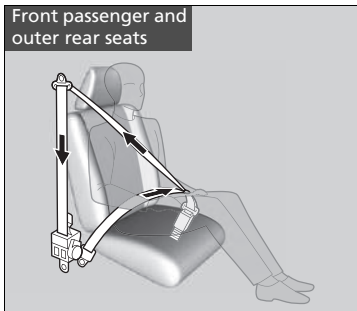
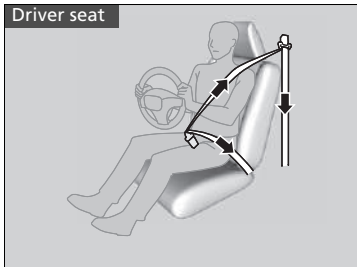
- Any of the rear passenger seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- Any of the rear passengers fasten or unfasten their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and the beeper sounds if any rear passenger seat belts are unfastened while driving.

## Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats and the outer rear seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



## Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

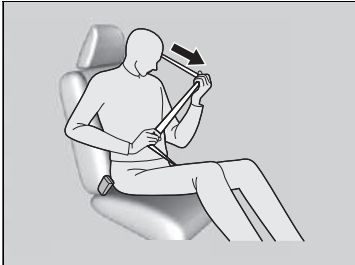
During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioners on both sides of the vehicle also activate.



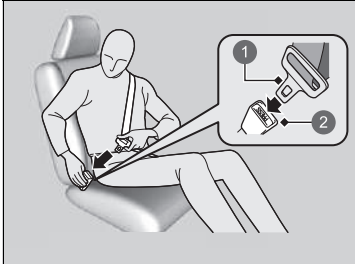
## Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat (see illustrations for correct seating posture):

➤ **Seats** P. 210



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

① Latch Plate

② Buckle

### Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.

Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

➤ **About Your Seat Belts** P. 45

➤ **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 57



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

**⚠ WARNING**

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

## ■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



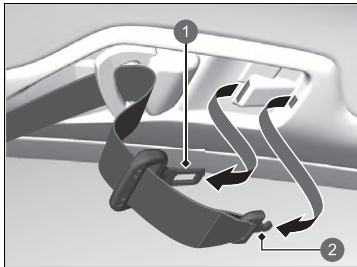
1. Move the anchorage up and down while pulling the shoulder anchorage outward.
2. Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

## ▣ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

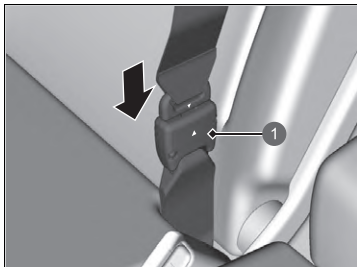
After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

## ■ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage



- ① Latch Plate
- ② Small Latch Plate



- ① Anchorage Buckle

1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchorage buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchorage buckle.

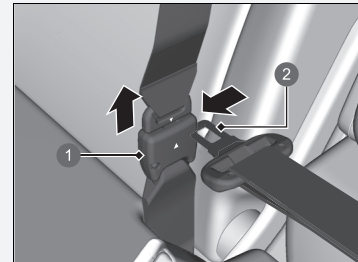
## ▶▶ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage

### **⚠ WARNING**

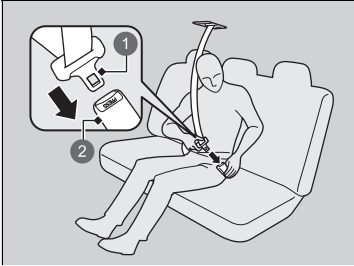
Using the seat belt with the detachable anchorage unfastened increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchorage is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchorage, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.



- ① Anchorage Buckle
- ② Latch Plate



- ① Latch Plate
- ② Buckle

3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle.  
Properly fasten the seat belt the same way  
you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

## ■ Advice for Pregnant Women

### Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



## ▣ Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

### Seat Belt Inspection

## ⚠ WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

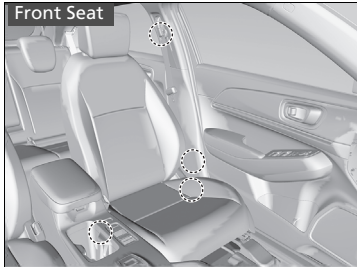
Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

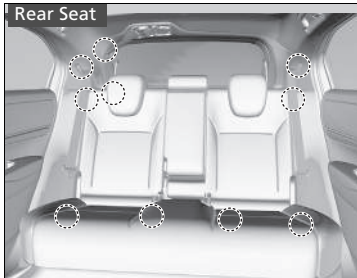
**WARNING:** It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

**WARNING:** Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

## Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.



## Airbag System Components

The front, side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags. One for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- Safing Sensor

## ■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

## ▶ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

## Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

## Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

### ■ Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

### ✉ Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

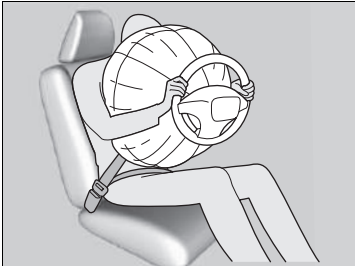
After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest. The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

### ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts, and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

### ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

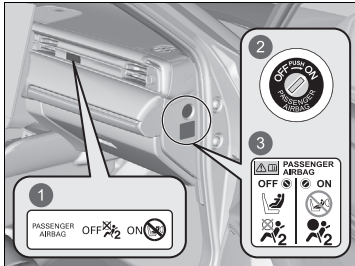
### ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

## ▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the built-in key.

### ▶ Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



- 1 Passenger Front Airbag **ON/OFF** Indicator
- 2 **ON/OFF** Switch
- 3 System Warning Label

When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

**OFF:** The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.

The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

**ON:** The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

### ▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

#### **WARNING**

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

#### **WARNING**

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

## ■ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



### 1 Passenger Front Airbag **ON/OFF** Switch

1. Set the parking brake, and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Open the front passenger's door.
3. Insert the built-in key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
  - ▶ The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
4. Turn the built-in key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

### ■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you set the power mode is in ON.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

### ■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



- 1 Infant in a rear-facing child restraint system: May ride in front if it is unavoidable
- 2 Cannot be seated in front
- 3 Passenger front airbag is: Active
- 4 Inactive

### ▶▶ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system

#### NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's built-in key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply an excessive load on the built-in key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

#### ▶ Protecting Infants P. 77

It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

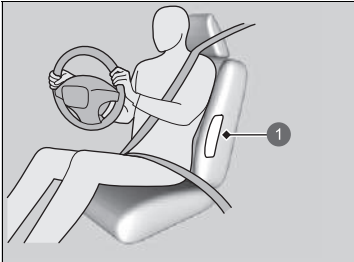
When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.



## Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



① Side Airbag Location

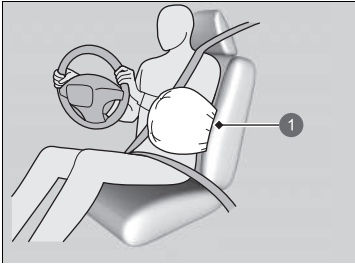
The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

## ■ Operation



① Deployed Side Airbag

When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

## ⌘ Side Airbags

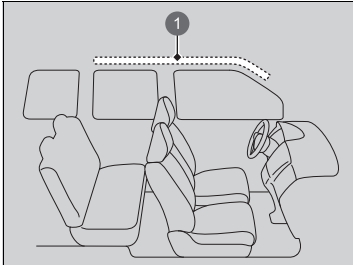
Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

## Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



1 Side Curtain Airbag Location

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

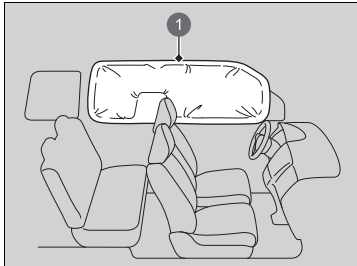
### Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

## ■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

① Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

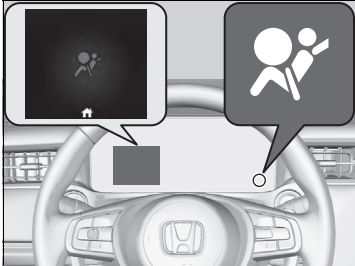
### ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

### Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



#### ■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

### Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

#### ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

## ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator



### ■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

#### ✘ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

### Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

#### **WARNING**



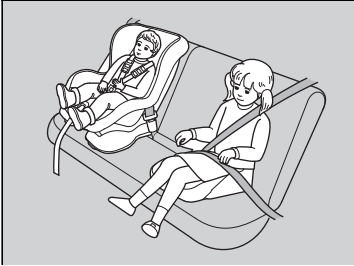
**NEVER** use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

#### **WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.





Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

#### ▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm (60 inches) be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

▶▶ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 80

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

**WARNING:** Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

▶ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows**  
P. 188

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor. Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

▶ **Safety Labels** P. 101

## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



#### Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it. If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

#### Protecting Infants

### WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

#### ▶▶ Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

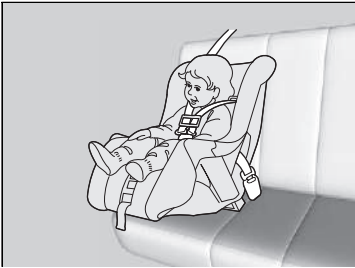
If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

▶ **Passenger Front Airbag Off System** P. 64

## Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



### Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

### Protecting Smaller Children

## ⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

## ■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

### ▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

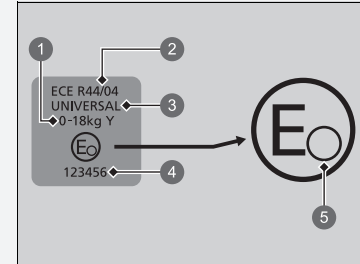
Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

## ■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

### ✎ Selecting a Child Restraint System

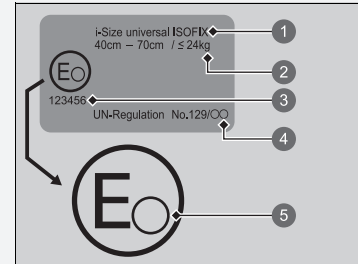
Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



- ① “Mass group”
- ② Regulation number
- ③ Category
- ④ Approval number
- ⑤ Country code

### ▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



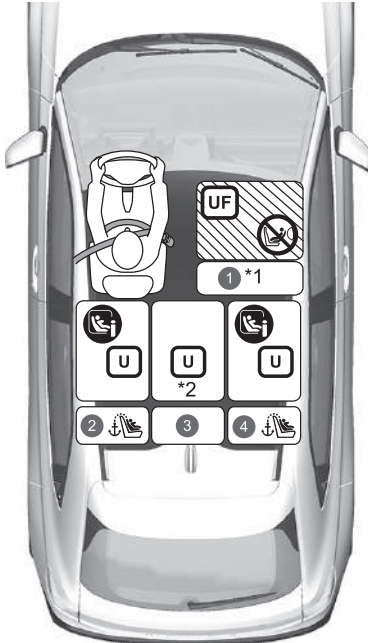
- ❶ Category
- ❷ Size and weight indication
- ❸ Approval number
- ❹ Regulation number
- ❺ Country code



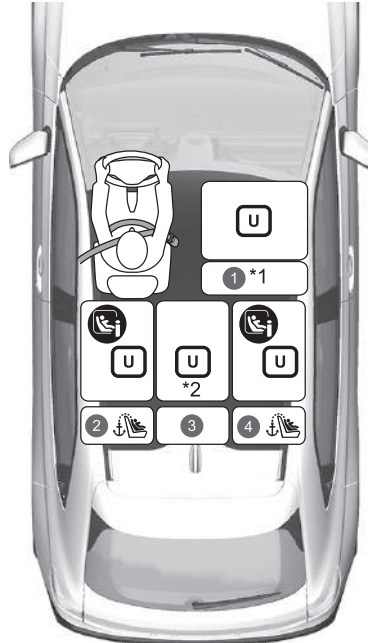
## Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Left-hand drive type

Passenger Airbag ON



Passenger Airbag OFF

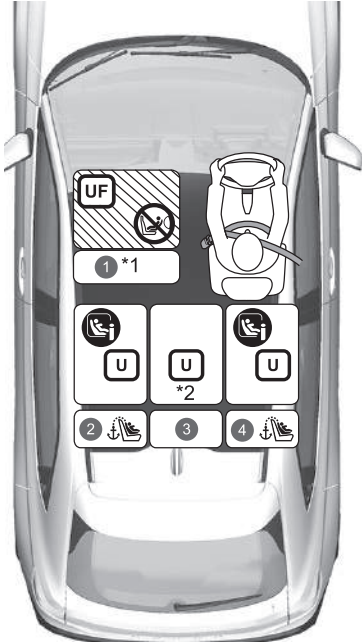


	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

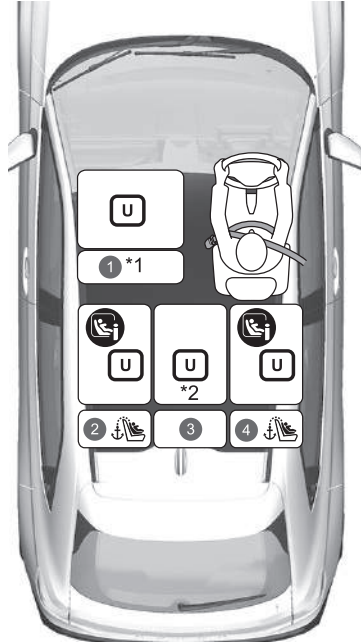
- \*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- \*2: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the side seat belt unusable.
  - If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint.  
Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.  
Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
  - Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

Right-hand drive type

Passenger Airbag ON



Passenger Airbag OFF



	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

- \*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- \*2: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the side seat belt unusable.
  - If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint.  
Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.  
Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
  - Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

All models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number						
	Size groups Weight Stature		①		②	③	④
			Front passenger <sup>1</sup>		2nd row		
			Front passenger airbag ON/OFF switch position		Left	Centre <sup>*2</sup>	Right
ON <sup>*3</sup>	OFF						
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg					
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg					
	Group III	22-36kg					
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS <sup>*4</sup>	Refer to genuine CRS list		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg					
	Group I	9-18kg					
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3	B3

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

- \*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- \*2: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the side seat belt unusable.
- \*3: Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed when the front passenger airbag is on.
- \*4: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs.  
Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint.  
Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.  
Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

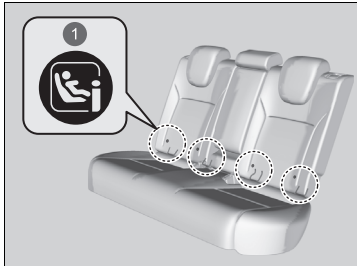
## Europe Genuine CRS List

### UN R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
40cm to 83cm up to 13kg (Birth - 15 months)	Honda baby safe	Universal Belted
	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	i-Size universal ISOFIX
76cm to 105cm 9kg to 22kg (15 months - 4 years)	Honda ISOFIX	i-Size Universal ISOFIX
100cm to 150cm 15kg to 36kg (3.5 years - 12 years)	Honda KIDFIX	i-Size Booster seat

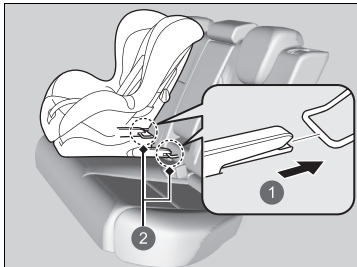
## ■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors (see illustrations).



1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

### ① Marks



- ① Rigid Type
- ② Lower Anchorages

2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

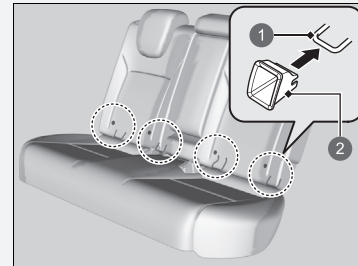
► When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

## ► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

### ⚠ WARNING

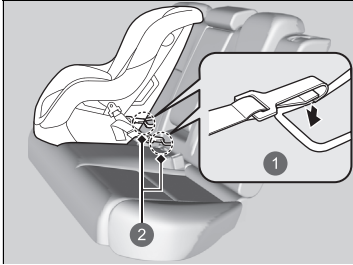
**Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.**

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.

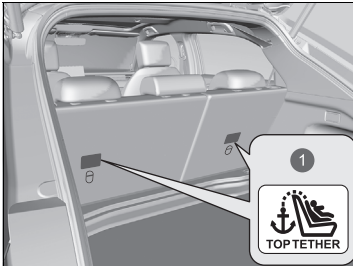


- ① Lower Anchorage
- ② Guide-cup





- 1 Flexible Type
- 2 Lower Anchorages



- 1 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

**WARNING:** Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

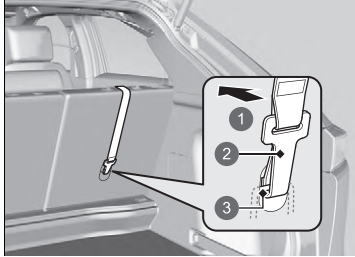
Reinstall the head restraint when the child restraint system is removed.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

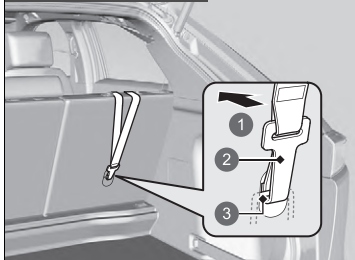
The flexible type may not be available in your country.

Straight top tether type



- 1 Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- 3 Anchorage

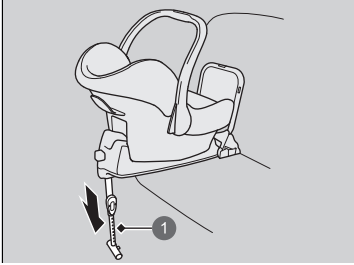
Other top tether type



- 1 Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- 3 Anchorage

Child restraint system with tether strap

- 3. Remove the head restraint.
  - Remove the luggage area cover.
    - **Luggage Area Cover** P. 230
- 4. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
- 5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
- 6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- 7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- 8. Reinstall the head restraint.
- 9. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

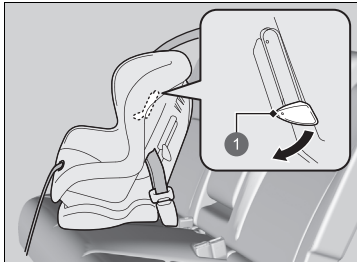
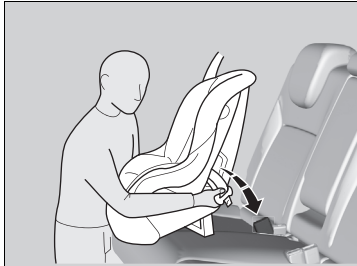


1 Support Leg

### Child restraint system with support leg

3. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
  - ▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
  - ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

## ■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

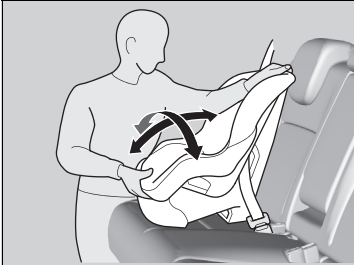


1 Tab

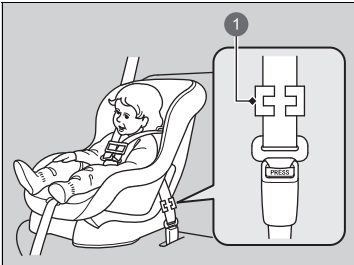
1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
  - ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
  - ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
  - ▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

## ▶▶ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



1 Locking Clip

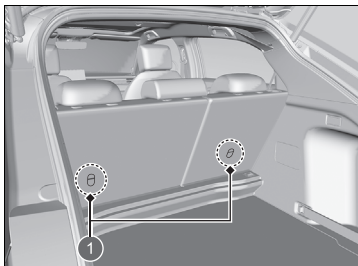
**Except European models**

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

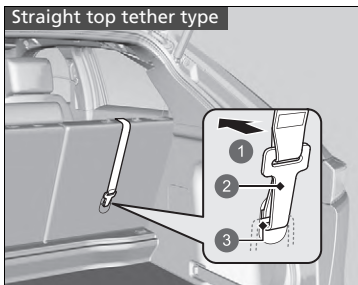
## ■ Adding Security with a Tether



① Tether Anchorage Points

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Remove the head restraint.
  - ▶ Remove the luggage area cover.
    - ▣ **Luggage Area Cover** P. 230
2. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
5. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
6. Reinstall the head restraint.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

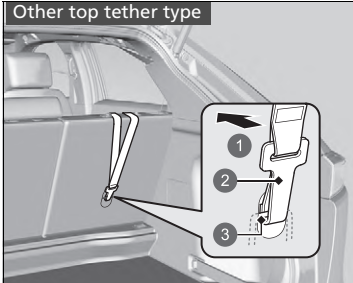


- ① Ahead of the Vehicle
- ② Tether Strap Hook
- ③ Anchorage

## ▣ Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.



- ① Ahead of the Vehicle
- ② Tether Strap Hook
- ③ Anchorage

## Safety of Larger Children

### ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



#### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

### ▶ Safety of Larger Children

## ⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

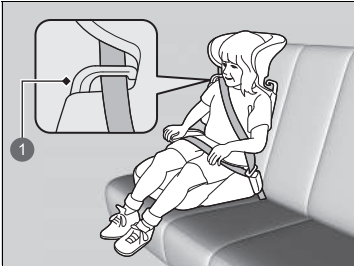
If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.



## Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



1 Guide

A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

### Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

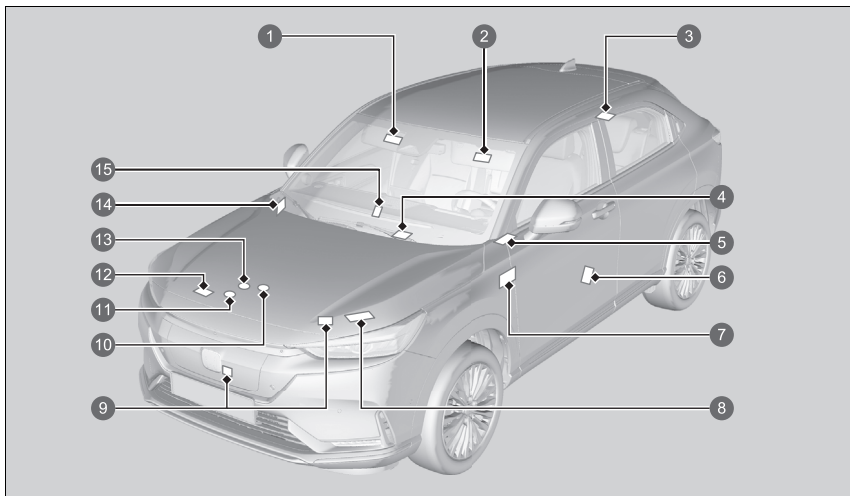
### ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



- ① Protecting Child Passenger (Left-hand drive type) ➤ P. 74
- ② Protecting Child Passenger (Right-hand drive type) ➤ P. 74
- ③ Rear Head Restraint ➤ P. 218
- ④ Wireless Charger ➤ P. 233
- ⑤ High Voltage Battery System
- ⑥ Information for Painting (Left-hand drive type) ➤ P. 620
- ⑦ Passenger Front Airbag Off System (Right-hand drive type) ➤ P. 66
- ⑧ 12-Volt Battery ➤ P. 608

- 9 Charging Information Label ➡ P. 548, 551
- 10 Climate Control Coolant Reserve Tank ➡ P. 587
- 11 Radiator Cap ➡ P. 583
- 12 Air Conditioner ➡ P. 611
- 13 IPU Coolant Reserve Tank ➡ P. 583
- 14 Passenger Front Airbag Off System (Left-hand drive type) ➡ P. 66
- 15 Information for Painting (Right-hand drive type) ➡ P. 620

# Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.























<b>Indicators</b> .....	104
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages.....	124
<b>Gauges and Driver Information Interface</b>	
Gauges.....	137
Driver Information Interface .....	139

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.






















Display messages by setting **Warning message** to ON via the audio/information screen.

You can also change the message language.


 **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 331

 *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→P. 106		Transmission System Indicator	→P. 109	 *1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→P. 112
 *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→P. 108		Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	→P. 110	 *1	Passenger Front Airbag ON/OFF Indicators	→P. 112
 *1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→P. 108	<b>SPORT</b>	<b>SPORT</b> Mode Indicator	→P. 110	 *1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→P. 113
 *1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→P. 108	<b>NORMAL</b>	<b>NORMAL</b> Mode Indicator	→P. 110	 *1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	→P. 113
 *1	Power System Indicator	→P. 108	<b>ECON</b>	<b>ECON</b> Mode Indicator	→P. 110	 *1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→P. 113
	Ready Indicator	→P. 109		Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→P. 111	 *1	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator	→P. 114
 *1	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	→P. 109		Low Charge Indicator (Amber)	→P. 111		System Message Indicator	→P. 115
	Shift Position Indicator	→P. 109	 *1	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	→P. 112			


\*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.





	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators →P. 115		Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator →P. 118		*1 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber) →P. 120
	Lights On Indicator →P. 116		Immobilizer System Indicator →P. 117		Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey) →P. 120
	High Beam Indicator →P. 116		Security System Alarm Indicator →P. 117		*1 Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber) →P. 120
	Auto High-Beam Indicator →P. 116		*1 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber) →P. 118		Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator →P. 120
	Front Fog Light Indicator →P. 116		Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green) →P. 118		Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey) →P. 121
	Rear Fog Light Indicator →P. 116		*1 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber) →P. 119		*1 Safety Support Indicator (Amber) →P. 121
	Parking Sensor Indicator →P. 116		Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green) →P. 119		Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey) →P. 123





\*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 <p>(Red)</p>	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied.</li> <li>Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off.</li> <li>Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>What to do when the indicator comes on while driving</b> P. 649</li> </ul> </li> </ul>








Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 <p>(Red)</p>	<p>Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber)</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✘ <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On</b> P. 651</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✘ <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 649</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time</b> - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✘ <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On</b> P. 651</li> </ul> </li> </ul>




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 484</li> </ul>
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 484</li> </ul>
	Power System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system or plug-in charging system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> <li><b>Do not drive</b> displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.</li> </ul>


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Ready Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Turning on the Power</b> P. 377</li> </ul>
	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Checking the 12-Volt Battery</b> P. 604</li> <li>➤ <b>If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 648</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	Shift Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates the current shift position.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Shifting</b> P. 382</li> </ul>
	Transmission System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li> <li>Blinks if you cannot select <b>P</b> due to a transmission system failure.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> <li><b>Do not drive displays on the driver information interface</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.</li> <li>Set the parking brake when parking.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message</b> P. 653</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled.</li> <li>• Blinks when deceleration does not occur while pulling the paddle selector.</li> <li>• Comes on with <b>M</b> when <b>SPORT</b> mode is selected and pulling the paddle selector.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Deceleration Paddle Selector</b> P. 388</p>
	<b>SPORT</b> Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you set the drive mode to <b>SPORT</b>.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>SPORT Mode</b> P. 392</p>
	<b>NORMAL</b> Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you set the drive mode to <b>NORMAL</b>.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>NORMAL Mode</b> P. 392</p>
	<b>ECON</b> Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you set the drive mode to <b>ECON</b>.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>ECON Mode</b> P. 393</p>





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON.</li> <li>• If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.</li> <li>• Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON.</li> <li>• Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts.</li> <li>• <b>Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s)</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 48</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	Low Charge Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the High Voltage battery is running low (approximately 15% left).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on</b> - There is a decrease in acceleration performance. Recharge the High Voltage battery as soon as possible.</li> </ul>












Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> P. 487</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Supplemental Restraint System</li> <li>- Side airbag system</li> <li>- Side curtain airbag system</li> <li>- Seat belt tensioner</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Passenger Front Airbag <b>ON/OFF</b> Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the passenger front airbag is active: The <b>ON</b> indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds.</li> <li>When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The <b>OFF</b> indicator comes back on and stays on.</li> <li>This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Passenger Front Airbag Off System</b> P. 64</li> </ul>

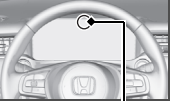
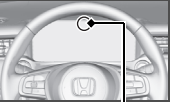
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks when VSA is active.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, agile handling assist, or hill start assist system.</li> <li>• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System</b> P. 395</li> <li>▣ <b>Hill start assist system</b> P. 379</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) <b>OFF</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you partially disable VSA.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>VSA On and Off</b> P. 396</li> </ul>
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system or Driver Attention Monitor system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• <b>Do not drive displays on the driver information interface</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 650</li> </ul> </li> </ul>





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.</li> <li>• Comes on and stays on when:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>- The system has not been calibrated.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li>• <b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be calibrated.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>Deflation Warning System Calibration</b> P. 400</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>









Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>While the indicator is on, press the  (home) button, and select <b>Information</b> to see the message again.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☒ <b>Switching the Display</b> P. 139</li> </ul> </li> <li>Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message.</li> <li>The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the  (home) button is pressed.</li> </ul>
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.</li> <li>Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul> <p>☒ <b>Emergency Stop Signal</b> P. 489</p>



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.</li> </ul>	 <b>Lights</b> P. 192
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li> </ul>	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.</li> </ul>	 <b>Auto High-Beam</b> P. 198
	Front Fog Light Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the front fog lights are on.</li> </ul>	 <b>Fog Lights</b> P. 195
	Rear Fog Light Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the rear fog light is on.</li> </ul>	 <b>Fog Lights</b> P. 195
	Parking Sensor Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if there are obstacles around the sensors.</li> </ul>	 <b>Parking Sensor System</b> P. 491





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 <p>Indicator</p>	<p>Immobilizer System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Right-hand drive type</b> Depress and hold the brake pedal before setting the power mode to ON.</li> <li><b>All models</b></li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>
 <p>Indicator</p>	<p>Security System Alarm Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li> </ul>	<p>🔔 <b>Security System Alarm</b> P. 183</p>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.</li> <li>• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> <li>• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.</li> <li>• ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Load Limit</b> P. 375</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lights up in white when you press the  button.</li> <li>• Lights up in green when you press the <b>RES/+</b> button or <b>SET/-</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow</b> P. 424</li> </ul>
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow indicator comes on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>To Set or Change Following-interval</b> P. 436</li> </ul>


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if the LKAS is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>📖 <b>Load Limit</b> P. 375</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button.</li> <li>Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>📖 <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 441</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Safety Support Indicator (Amber)</b> P. 121</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the CMBS is off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Safety Support</b> P. 152</li> </ul>
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Safety Support Indicator (Amber)</b> P. 121</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Road Departure Mitigation System</b> P. 463</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Safety Support</b> P. 152</p>
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system, Blind Spot Information, or CMBS.</li> <li>Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.</li> <li>Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected and then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Load Limit</b> P. 375</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/ or CMBS shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.   <b>Front Wide View Camera</b> P. 478</li> <li>• <b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera.   <b>Front Wide View Camera</b> P. 478</li> <li>• It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor.</li> <li>• Comes on when the temperature of the blind spot information system sensor is high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Something may be interfering with the blind spot information system sensor. Check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles.</li> <li>• The system will return to normal when the temperature cools down.   <b>Blind Spot Information System</b>* P. 402</li> </ul>




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	<p>Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system, Blind Spot Information, and CMBS are on.</li> <li>• Lights up in green and grey when the Road Departure Mitigation system, Blind Spot Information, or CMBS, or any two of these systems are off.</li> <li>• Lights up in grey when the Road Departure Mitigation system, Blind Spot Information, and CMBS are off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Road Departure Mitigation System</b> P. 463</li> <li>➤ <b>Blind Spot Information System*</b> P. 402</li> <li>➤ <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> P. 411</li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models

## Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

---

The warning and information messages appear only on the driver information interface.

Press the  (home) button, select **Information**, then press the left selector wheel to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

### ■ Icons

Since messages will not display on the driver information interface when **Warning message** is set to OFF, you can check the messages below. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.






- **Red Icons** P. 125
- **Amber Icons** P. 127
- **Other Icons** P. 133





Display messages by setting **Warning message** to ON via the audio/information screen. You can also change the message language.

- **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 331


■ Red Icons

Icon	Message
	<p>Critical system failure detected. Stop driving when safe.</p> <p>Steering assist reduced. Stop driving when safe.</p> <p>Brake performance reduced. Stop driving when safe.</p>
	<p>Brake fluid low. Do not drive. Check fluid level.</p>
	<p>Parking brake engaged</p> <p>Release parking brake</p> <p>Cannot set cruise: Parking brake is applied</p> <p>Cruise cancelled: Parking brake was applied</p>
	<p>Brake system problem. Brake performance may be reduced.</p>







Icon	Message
	<p>Brake system problem. Do not drive.</p>
	<p>Fasten seat belt</p>
	<p>Fasten passenger's seat belt</p>
	<p>☒ Seat Belt Reminder P. 48</p>
	<p>12 volt battery charging system problem. Do not drive.</p>

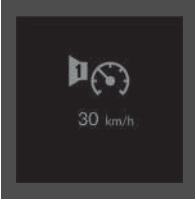




Icon	Message
	<b>Supplemental restraint system problem</b>
	<b>Check rear seats</b>
	<b>Door open</b>
	<b>Tailgate open</b>







Icon	Message
	<b>Door and tailgate open</b>
	<b>Steering required</b>
	<b>Lane departure</b>
	<b>Parking sensor system problem</b>
	<b>Approaching object</b>
	<b>Bonnet open</b>



Icon	Message
	<p><b>High voltage battery thermal problem. Stop driving when safe then evacuate the vehicle.</b></p> <p>► If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears P. 655</p>
	<p><b>High voltage battery thermal problem. Apply parking brake then evacuate the vehicle.</b></p> <p>► If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears P. 655</p>
	<p><b>High voltage battery thermal problem. Evacuate the vehicle.</b></p> <p>► If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears P. 655</p>







■ Amber Icons






Icon	Message
	<p><b>Apply parking brake to keep vehicle stationary</b></p>
	<p>► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 424</p> <p>► Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 411</p>
	<p><b>Steering required</b></p>
	<p><b>Lane departure</b></p>
	<p><b>Outside temperature low. Road surface may be frozen.</b></p>
	<p><b>Temperature too low for vehicle to operate</b></p>








Icon	Message
	► Speed Alarm P. 146
	Transmission system problem. Performance may be reduced.
	Transmission system problem. Apply parking brake when parked.
	Transmission system problem. Do not drive.
	Transmission system problem. Park not available.

Icon	Message
	Shift to Park
	Neutral-hold mode ON. Shift to P when done
	Anti-lock brake system problem. Brake performance may be reduced.
	Brake system problem. Brake performance may be reduced.
	Brake system problem. Do not depress Brake + Accelerator together.
	Brake system problem. Brake performance may be reduced.







Icon	Message
	Models with Honda Parking Pilot <b>Brake system problem.</b> Brake performance may be reduced.
	Models with Honda Parking Pilot <b>Brake system problem.</b> Honda parking pilot not available.
	<b>Reduced stopping power.</b> Avoid heavy deceleration and high speed.
	<b>Electric parking brake system problem.</b> Parking brake not available.
	<b>Vehicle stability assist system problem.</b> Traction and handling may be reduced.
	<b>Systems initializing...</b> Continue driving.



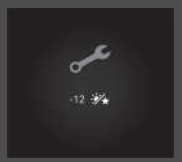


Icon	Message
	<b>Hill start assist problem.</b> Vehicle may roll upon brake release.
	<b>Brake hold system problem.</b> Apply brake when stopped.
	<b>Brake hold disabled.</b> Apply brake pedal.
	<b>Cruise cancelled:</b> Depress brake pedal
	<b>To release parking brake:</b> Brake + Push
	Models with power tailgate <b>Power tailgate system problem.</b> operate tailgate manually.

Icon	Message
	<p><b>Electric power steering system problem. Steering assist reduced.</b></p> <p>Electric power steering system problem. No steering assist. Do not drive.</p>
	<p><b>Driver attention level low. Take a rest</b></p>
	<p><b>Driver attention monitor problem</b></p>
	<p><b>Automatic lighting control system problem. Manual controls available.</b></p>
	<p><b>Headlight system problem. Headlight performance may be reduced.</b></p>





Icon	Message
	<p><b>Auto high-beam problem. Manual controls available.</b></p>
	<p><b>Keyless remote not detected</b></p>
	<p><b>Change keyless remote battery</b>   Replacing the Remote Battery P. 609</p>
	<p><b>Smart entry system problem</b></p>
	<p><b>Digital key system problem</b></p>
	<p><b>Carry digital key and switch vehicle OFF when exiting</b></p>







Icon	Message
	<b>Tyre pressure monitor system problem</b>
	<b>Tyre pressures low.</b> Check pressure in all tyres and initialise deflation warning system in vehicle settings.
	<b>Adaptive cruise control system problem</b>
	<b>Collision mitigation braking system problem</b>
	<b>Lane keeping assist system problem</b>
	<b>Road departure mitigation system problem</b>

Icon	Message
	Models with service reminder system <b>Service due soon</b> ▶ Service Reminder System* P. 566
	Models with service reminder system <b>Service due now</b> ▶ Service Reminder System* P. 566
	Models with service reminder system <b>Service overdue</b> ▶ Service Reminder System* P. 566
	Models with Honda Parking Pilot <b>Honda parking pilot problem.</b> Honda parking pilot not available.
	<b>Blind spot information system problem</b>





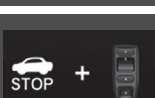

\* Not available on all models






Icon	Message
	Blind spot information not available
	Check charging system
	Low charge. Power reduced.
	Power system temperature low. Power may be reduced.
	Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.
	Power system problem. Power may be reduced.
	12 volt battery charging system problem. Power may be reduced.
	Battery charge low

Icon	Message
	Remove charging connector
	Power system problem. Power may be reduced.
	Plug-in charging system problem. Range limited.
	Standard plug-in charging system problem. Quick charging is available.
	Quick plug-in charging system problem. Standard charging is available. ⚠ If the Quick Plug-in Charging System Warning Appears P. 654
	Power system problem. Do not drive.
	Power system problem. Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.







Icon	Message
	<b>Acoustic vehicle alerting system problem</b>
	<b>Charge lid open</b>




■ Other Icons

Icon	Message
	<b>Outside temperature low. Road surface may be frozen.</b>
	<b>To shift: Depress brake pedal</b>
	<b>To shift: Release accelerator pedal</b>
	<b>Gear position is N. Release accelerator pedal.</b>
	<b>Cannot set cruise: Brake pedal is applied</b>
	<b>To shift: Vehicle must be stopped</b>

Icon	Message
	<b>Gear unavailable. Wait and try again.</b>
	<b>Brake hold system standby</b>
	<b>Brake hold system OFF</b>
	<b>To enable brake hold: Seat belt + Push</b>
	<b>To disable brake hold: Brake + Push</b>
	<b>To enable brake hold: Fasten seat belt</b>
	<b>Fasten seat belt</b>
	<b>Cannot set cruise: Fasten seat belt</b>
	<b>Cruise cancelled: Fasten seat belt</b>

Icon	Message
	<b>Driver attention level low</b>
	<b>Cannot set cruise: Speed too high</b>
	<b>Cruise cancelled: Speed too high</b>
	<b>Cannot set cruise: System not available</b>
	<b>Cruise cancelled: System not available</b>
	<b>Cruise will cancel soon</b>
	<b>Cannot set cruise: Too close to vehicle ahead</b>
	<b>Cruise cancelled: Too close to vehicle ahead</b>
	<b>Cannot set cruise: Slope too steep</b>
	<b>Cruise cancelled: Slope too steep</b>

Icon	Message
	Cannot set cruise: Slope too steep  Cruise cancelled: Slope too steep
	Cannot set cruise: Shift to Drive  Cruise cancelled: Shift to Drive
	To resume cruise: Use "RES/+ " switch
	Cruise cancelled: Loss of traction
	Press switch to operate
	Lane keeping assist cannot operate

Icon	Message
	Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high
	Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.
	Road departure mitigation activated
	Some driver assist systems available
	To unlock wheel: Push + Turn

Icon	Message
	<p><b>To start vehicle:</b> Brake + Push</p> <p><b>To start driving:</b> Brake + Push</p> <p>Right-hand drive type</p> <p><b>To start vehicle:</b> Fully depress Brake + Push</p> <p><b>To continue to drive:</b> Depress brake pedal and push switch</p>
	<p><b>To turn vehicle OFF:</b> Push twice</p> <p><b>Accessory mode</b></p> <p>Right-hand drive type</p> <p><b>Fully release Brake + Push</b></p>
	<p><b>To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote</b></p> <p>■ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 641</p>
	<p><b>Pressing button again twice or holding will cause ignition OFF &amp; power loss</b></p>

Icon	Message
	<b>Ready to drive</b>
	<b>Low ambient temperature.</b> Charge connection recommended.
	<b>Power consumption increase.</b> Charging is not available.
	<b>Power consumption increase.</b> Charging is not available.

## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, High Voltage battery charge level gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

### Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h or mph.

### High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

### POWER/CHARGE Gauge

Display the status of electric motor output and High Voltage battery charging.

### Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles that your vehicle has accumulated.

### Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power. This estimate is based on the energy consumption of your previous trips and the remaining charge of the High Voltage battery.

#### Speedometer

You can change the Speed/Distance units.

**Speed/Distance Units** P. 153

#### High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.


Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charging remains the same.

#### Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

## ■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the  **Outside temperature low** message appears on the driver information interface.

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

## ■ Traffic Sign Recognition System

Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving.

The indicator blinks when the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition System is exceeded.

## ■ Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist.

► **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 424

► **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 441

► **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 453

## ►► Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.




► **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331



## Driver Information Interface


The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and energy economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary.


Please refer to the pages below if the  **Reduced stopping power**,  **High voltage battery thermal problem**, or  **Quick plug-in charging system problem** message is displayed.

- **If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears** P. 648
- **If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears** P. 655
- **If the Quick Plug-in Charging System Warning Appears** P. 654

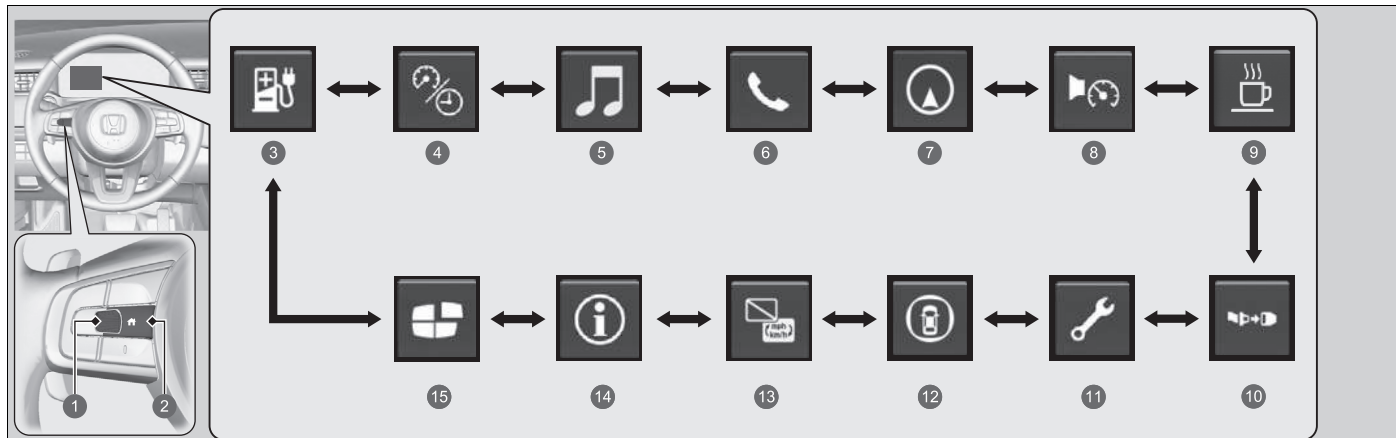
### Switching the Display

Press the  (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

#### Switching the Display

To go back to the previous screen, press the  (back) button.

You can add or delete the meter contents.  
 ➤ **Instrument Display Settings** P. 154

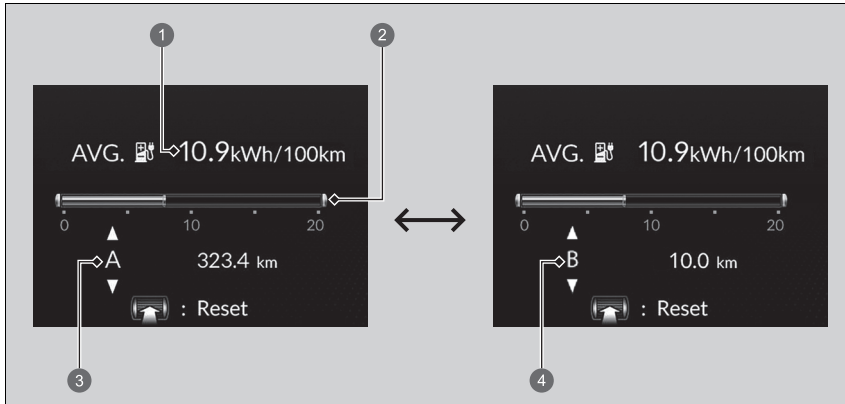


- 1 Left Selector Wheel
- 2 (home) Button
- 3 **Energy** P. 141
- 4 **Speed & time** P. 143
- 5 **Audio** P. 144
- 6 **Phone** P. 144
- 7 **Navigation** P. 145
- 8 **Speed alarm** P. 146

- 9 **Driver attention** P. 147
- 10 **Seat belts** P. 151
- 11 **Maintenance\*** P. 151
- 12 **Safety support** P. 152
- 13 **No content** P. 153
- 14 **Information** P. 154
- 15 **Instrument display settings** P. 154

## Energy Consumption / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



- ① Average Energy Consumption
- ② Instant Energy Consumption
- ③ Trip Meter A
- ④ Trip Meter B

### ■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.

- ▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

### ■ Average energy consumption

Shows the estimated average energy consumption of each trip meter in kWh/100km or miles/kWh. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average energy consumption is also reset.

### ■ Instant energy consumption

Shows the instant energy consumption as a bar graph in kWh/100km or miles/kWh.

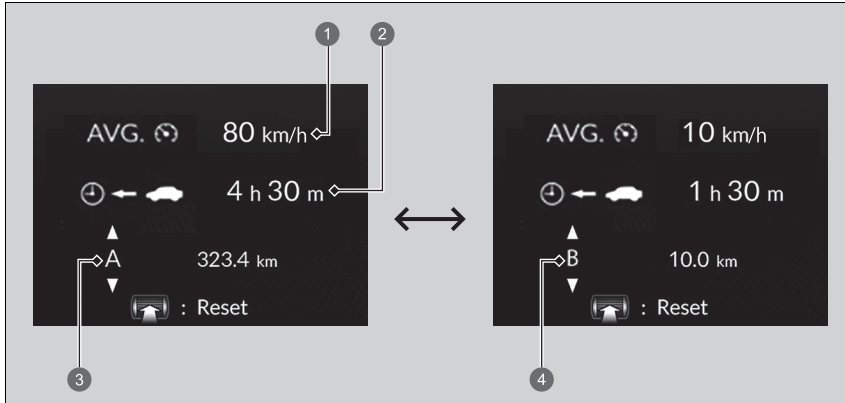
### ▶▶ Average energy consumption

You can change when to reset the average energy consumption.

- ▶ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

## ■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



- ① Average Speed
- ② Elapsed Time
- ③ Trip meter A
- ④ Trip meter B

## ■ Trip meter

➤ **Trip meter** P. 142

## ■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h or mph since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

➤ **Basic Operation** P. 255

## ■ Phone

Shows the current phone information.

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 341

## ▶▶ Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

## ▶▶ Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

## Navigation

### Compass

Shows the compass screen.

### Turn-by-turn directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system, Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

➤ **Android Auto™** P. 308

➤ **Apple CarPlay** P. 302

### Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 331

When the compass or turn-by-turn directions are displayed, you can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.

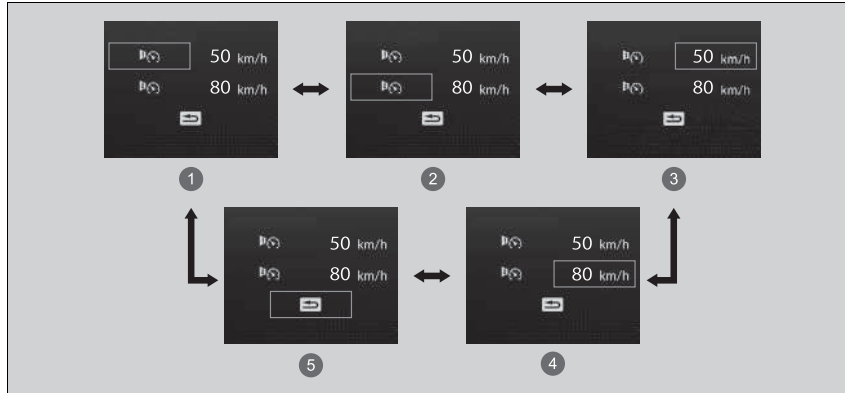
➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

Turn-by-turn directions may not be available for all apps.

## ■ Speed Alarm

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Roll the left selector wheel, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



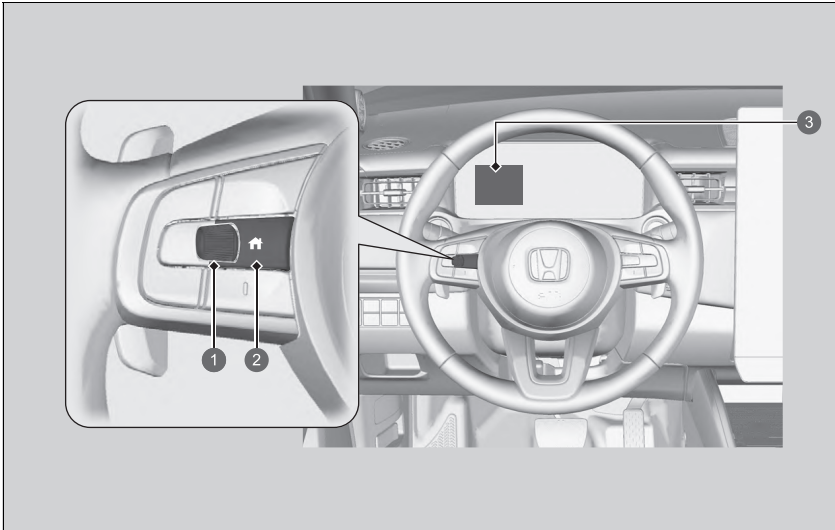
- ① Speed Alarm 1 On/Off\*<sup>1</sup>
- ② Speed Alarm 2 On/Off\*<sup>1</sup>
- ③ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting [50 km/h (30mph)\*<sup>1</sup>]
- ④ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting [80 km/h (50mph)\*<sup>1</sup>]
- ⑤ Back


\*1:Default Setting



## ■ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.



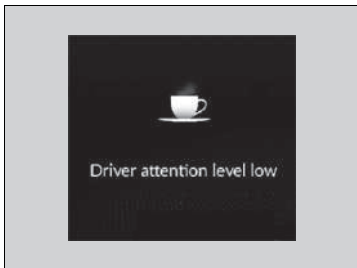
- ① Left Selector Wheel
- ②  (Home) Button
- ③ Driver Information Interface

### ⊞ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive. Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



1 Level




When you select **Driver attention** on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 139

If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.



If the number of bars drops to one, a beep will sound and the coffee cup will turn to amber to warn the driver that he or she needs a break as his or her attention level is too low. If the coffee cup lights up in amber, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed. The amber coffee cup warning will disappear when the  (home) button is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.

If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the coffee cup will light up in amber again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep.

The warning does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

■ **The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:**

- The power system is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:**

- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:**

- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  - **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 441
- The condition of the road is poor; e.g., the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner, such as changing lanes or accelerating.

►► For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

## ■ Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

🔍 **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 48

## ■ Maintenance\*

Show the service reminder system.

🔍 **Service Reminder System\*** P. 566

## ■ Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, Blind Spot Information System, and CMBS such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



- 1 Area Info for the Road Departure Mitigation system
- 2 Area Info for the Blind Spot Information System
- 3 Area Info for the CMBS
- 4 Road Departure Mitigation system Icon and Status Info
- 5 Blind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info
- 6 CMBS Icon and Status Info

## ► Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

- **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 463
- **Blind Spot Information System\*** P. 402
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 411

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 120
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)** P. 120
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 120
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)** P. 121
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator** P. 120
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 121
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 123

## ■ Speed/Distance Units

Enables you to show another unit on the driver information interface and audio/information screen and set the displayed measurements to read in either km and km/h or miles and mph.

Press and hold the left selector wheel when you select **No content** on the driver information interface. Each time you do this, the unit will change from **km, km/h** to **miles, mph** or vice versa. After this, a confirmation screen will appear for a few seconds.

## ■ Information



You can check if there are any active warning messages.

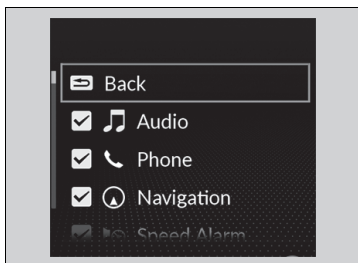
▶ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 124

## ■ Instrument Display Settings

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Instrument display settings**, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select  / , then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

### ▶▶ Information

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

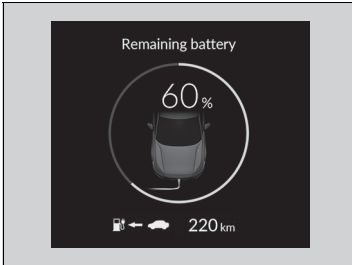
### ▶▶ Instrument Display Settings

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to **[P]**.



## ■ Remaining Battery

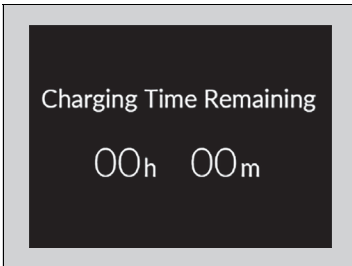


Displays the current status of the High Voltage battery.

The colour of the circle represents the current High Voltage battery status.

- Green: Charging
- Amber: High Voltage battery is running low (approximately 15% left)
- White: When other than the above or when fully charged

## ■ Charging Time Remaining



Displays the current charging status.

▶ **Charging** P. 544

## ▶ Remaining Battery

If amber is displayed, charge the High Voltage battery as soon as possible.



# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b>	
Key .....	158
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength ....	160
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	161
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	168
Childproof Door Locks .....	170
<b>Tailgate</b> .....	171
<b>Security System</b>	
Immobilizer System .....	182
Security System Alarm.....	183

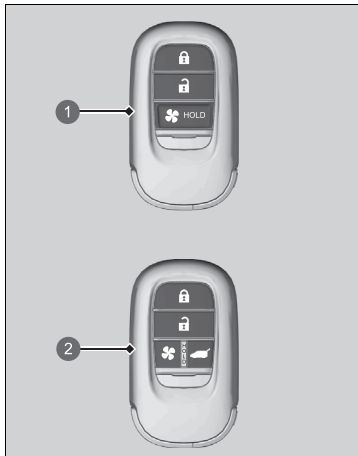
Ultrasonic Sensors* .....	185
Tilt Sensor* .....	186
Super Locking* .....	187
<b>Windows</b> .....	188
<b>Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel</b>	
POWER Button.....	190
Lights.....	192
Headlight Adjuster.....	197
Auto High-Beam .....	198
Wipers and Washers .....	201

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button .....	204
Brightness Control.....	205
Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	206
<b>Mirrors</b>	
Interior Rearview Mirror .....	207
Power Door Mirrors .....	208
<b>Seats</b> .....	210
<b>Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	221
<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	240

\* Not available on all models

## Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



- 1 Keyless Remote
- 2 Keyless Remote with Power Tailgate Button

Use the keys to start and stop the power system, and lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and charge lid.

### Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➤ **Immobilizer System** P. 182

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

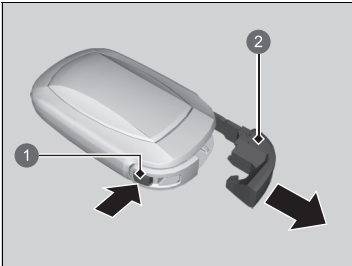
If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

You can turn the climate control system on and off using the keyless remote.

➤ **Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning** P. 246

## ■ Built-in Key

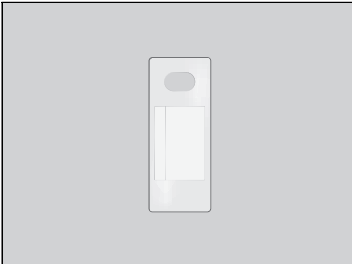


- ① Release Button
- ② Built-in Key

The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

## ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

### ☒ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle. If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

## Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to activate the power system, when lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate and charge lid.

In the following cases, activating the power system or locking/unlocking the doors/tailgate/charge lid may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted from nearby devices such as quick chargers.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

### Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

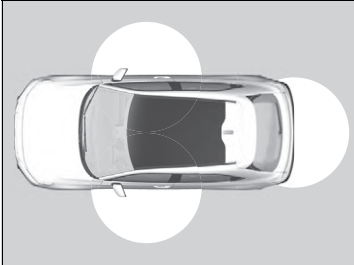
Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off. If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### ■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate. You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm (32 inches) from the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

### ☒ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➤ **Interior Lights** P. 221

### ☒ Using the Keyless Access System

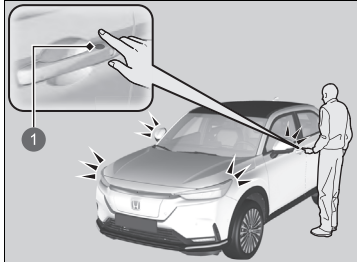
If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

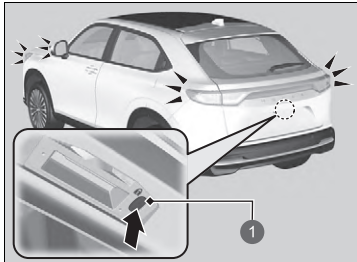
#### Right-hand drive type

The keyless access system will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

## ■ Locking the doors and tailgate



① Door Lock Sensor



① Lock Button

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

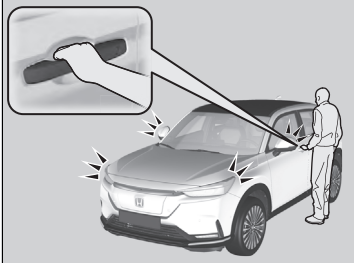
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.

## ▣ Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm (32 inches) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass and tailgate.

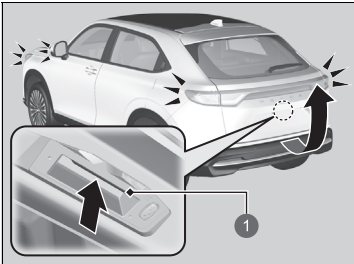


## ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate



Grab the front door handle:

- ▶ All doors and tailgate unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.



Press the outer handle:

- ▶ All doors and tailgate unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.
- ▶ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 172

① Outer Handle

## ▶▶ Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash setting can be customized using the audio/information screen.

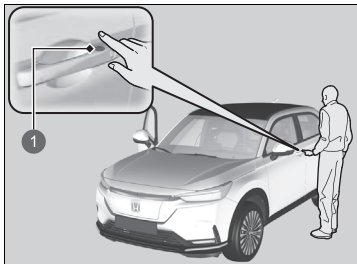
- ▶ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

### Models with power tailgate

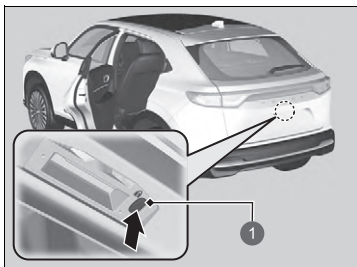
You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

- ▶ **Using the Tailgate Outer Handle** P. 178

## ■ Lock Presetting \*



① Door Lock Sensor



① Door Lock Button

The vehicle will automatically lock after you lock the doors in advance then close the doors and tailgate.

Activate lock presetting after closing the driver's door.

1. Touch the door lock sensor on the front door, press the lock button on the tailgate or press the lock button on the keyless remote.

▶ Lock presetting is activated.

2. Close all doors and the tailgate.

▶ Some exterior lights flash when vehicle locks.

Make sure the doors and tailgate are locked before moving away from the vehicle.

## ▶▶ Lock Presetting \*

### ⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the power tailgate\* on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury. Make sure all hands and fingers, especially children's, are clear of the power tailgate\*.

Lock presetting will be reset if a door or the tailgate is opened before the vehicle has locked completely.

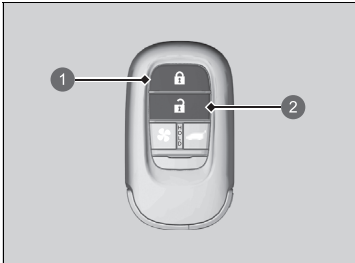
Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

You can turn this function on and off.

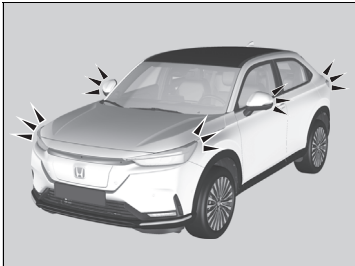
▶ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 331

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



- ① Lock Button
- ② Unlock Button



### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors, and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

### ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once, and all doors and tailgate unlock.

## ⊗ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

### Right-hand drive type

You cannot lock any doors from the outside when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, and the beeper sounds. If you want to lock a door while the keyless remote is still in the vehicle, do any of the following four times:

- Press the lock button on the keyless remote.
- Turn the key in the cylinder to lock.
- Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

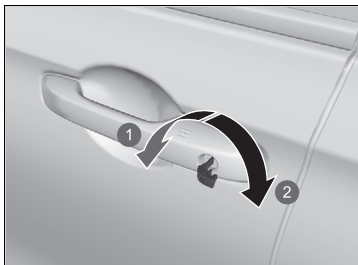
The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

### Right-hand drive type

The keyless remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

### ■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



- ① Lock
- ② Unlock

Fully insert the key and turn it.

### ▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.  
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

▶▶ **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 609

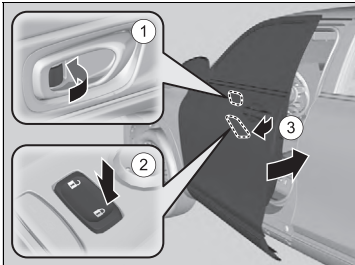
### ▶▶ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

## ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

### ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

### ■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

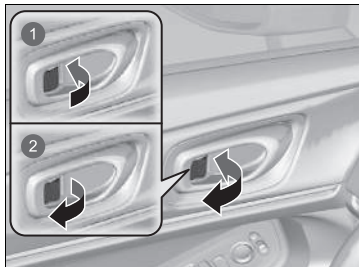
### ⊠ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

### ■ Using the Lock Tab

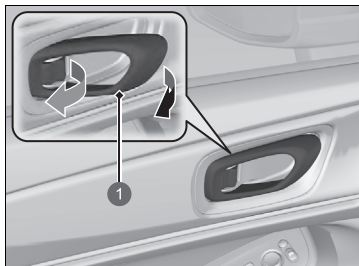


- 1 To Lock
- 2 To Unlock

■ **Locking a door**  
Push the lock tab forward.

■ **Unlocking a door**  
Pull the lock tab rearward.

### ■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



- 1 Inner Handle

Pull the front door inner handle.  
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

### ▶▶ Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

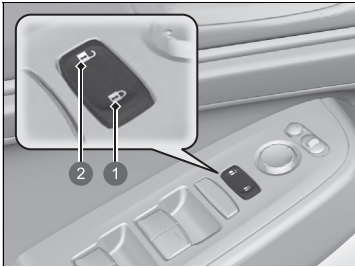
### ▶▶ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

▶▶ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 170

## ■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch



- ① To Lock
- ② To Unlock

Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

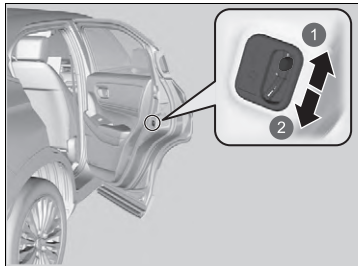
## ☒ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

## Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

### ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



- ① Unlock
- ② Lock

Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

### ■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

### ☒ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.



## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

### Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

### All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.

### Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

## **⚠ WARNING**

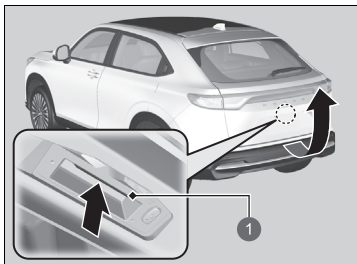
Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

**Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.**

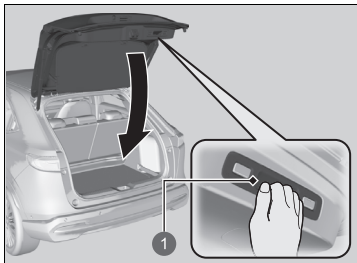
Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

## Opening/Closing the Tailgate



1 Outer Handle



1 Inner Handle

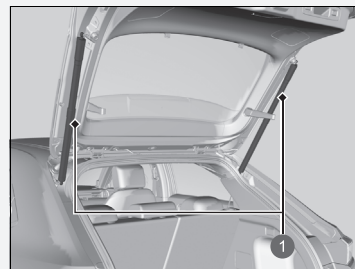
When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

### ►► Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Make sure luggage or other items do not touch the tailgate support struts.



1 Tailgate Support Struts

### ►► Opening/Closing the Tailgate

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

## Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button on the driver's side control panel, pressing the outer handle or button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in **P**.

### ☒ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Opening or closing a power tailgate while any part of a passenger is in the tailgate's operating path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers or objects are clear of the tailgate operating range before opening or closing the tailgate.

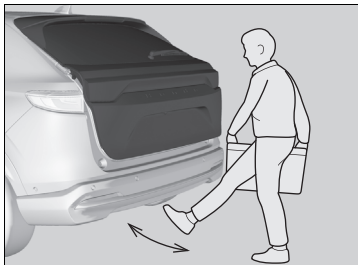
**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed. Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

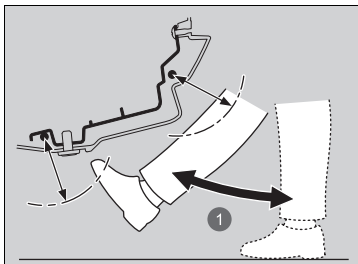
When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

## ■ Using the Hands Free Access



Use a forward and back kicking motion for about 1 second under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.

- Some exterior lights will flash, then the tailgate begins to move.



① About 1 second

## ▣ Using the Hands Free Access

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.

To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the audio/information screen and then select OFF for the feature.

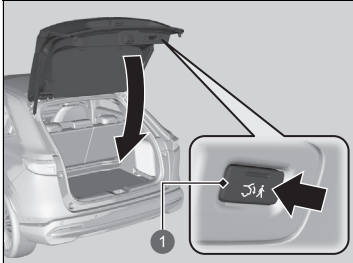
► **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long or sweep your foot from side to side, the power tailgate does not open or close.

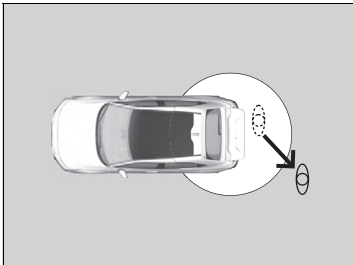
This function will not operate if you don't have the keyless remote on you. Please make sure you have the keyless remote on you.

## ■ Power Tailgate Walk Away Close

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote, the power tailgate will automatically close.



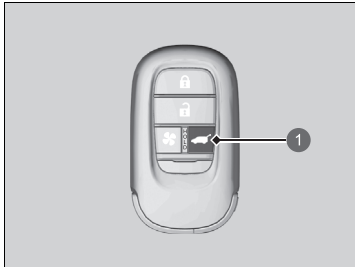
1 Walk Away Close Button



Walk at least 1.0 m away

1. Carry the keyless remote and press the walk away close button.
  - The indicator on the walk away close button will turn green when the walk away close is activated.
  
2. Walk at least 1.0 m away from the vehicle within 30 seconds of pressing the walk away close button.
  - Some exterior lights will flash, then the power tailgate begins to close.

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



① Power Tailgate Button

Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

▶ Some exterior lights will flash.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.

Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

## ■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

**Anytime:** The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

**When unlocked:** The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 331

## ⚠ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:

- You activate the power system while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

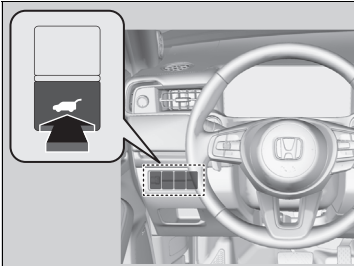
If you replace the 12-volt battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than Honda genuine accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

## ■ Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

▶ Some exterior lights will flash.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

## ☒ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

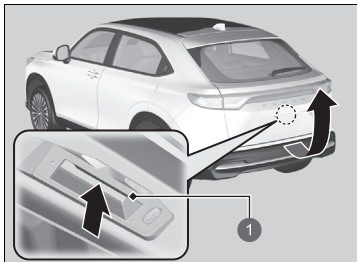
If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

## ■ Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



① Outer Handle

If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

- ▶ If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the outer handle for more than one second.

➤ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 172

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

## ▣ Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

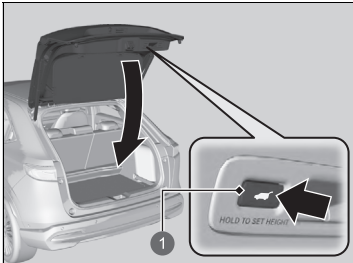
- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331



## ■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button

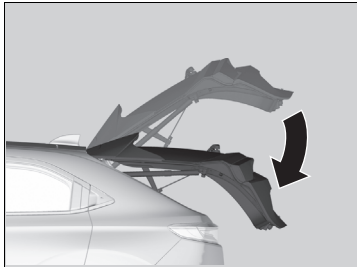


1 Tailgate Inner Button

Press the tailgate inner button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

If you press the tailgate inner button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the tailgate inner button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

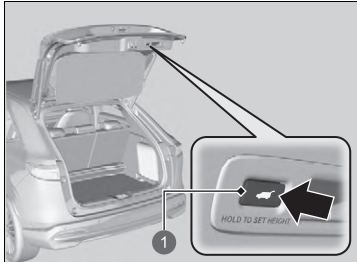
## ■ Programming Tailgate Position



The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programmed.

To program:

**1.** Open the tailgate to the desired position.



**2.** Press and hold the tailgate inner button.  
You will hear one long beep, followed by two short beeps.

**1** Tailgate Inner Button

## ▣ Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the tailgate inner button.

If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow directions for step 2.

## Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

## Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, with snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

### Auto-Closer

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you push the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

#### NOTICE

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

### Power Tailgate Fall Detection

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

## Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

### Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

#### Right-hand drive type

Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the battery has been disconnected.

## Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and some exterior lights flash.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

### ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

### ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

### ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

#### ⓘ Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

## » Security System Alarm

### Right-hand drive type

The system may accidentally activate such as when:

- The vehicle is parked in an automated garage.
- The vehicle is being washed with highly pressurized water or being put through an automated car wash.
- The vehicle is being transported by train, ferry or trailer.
- The vehicle is subjected to heavy rain or stormy weather.
- Ice is being removed from the vehicle.

You can use ultrasonic/tilt sensor **OFF** button not to accidentally activate the security system alarm.

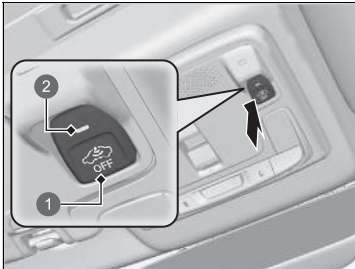
➤ **Ultrasonic Sensors\*** P. 185

➤ **Tilt Sensor\*** P. 186

## Ultrasonic Sensors\*

The ultrasonic sensors activate only when the security system alarm is set. If the sensors detect an intruder moving around inside or entering the interior of the vehicle through a window, the sensor will activate the alarm.

### ■ To set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensors



- 1 Ultrasonic/Tilt Sensor **OFF** Button
- 2 Indicator

You can set the security system without activating the ultrasonic sensor.

To turn off the ultrasonic sensor system, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF by pressing the **POWER** button and then press the ultrasonic/tilt sensor **OFF** button.

- ▶ The indicator is on in red.

To turn it on again, press the ultrasonic/tilt sensor **OFF** button.

Ultrasonic sensors are turned on every time you set the security system alarm, even if you turned it off the last time.

### ⌘ Ultrasonic Sensors\*

Whether the ultrasonic sensors have been activated or not, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter or keyless access system, not the key.

It is possible to confirm whether the vehicle security system was activated without your knowledge. If the security system has been activated, the indicator will blink for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you turn the power system on and transmission is changed other than **[P]**, the indicator will stop blinking after 5 seconds.

If the ultrasonic sensor is malfunctioning or there is another problem, the indicator will come on for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you turn the power system on and transmission is changed other than **[P]**, the indicator will shut off.

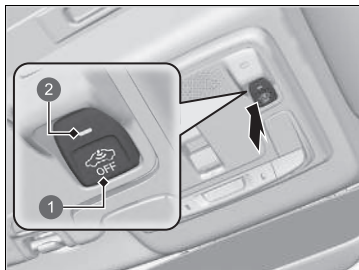
The security system may accidentally activate by ultrasonic sensors such as when:

- Someone is in the vehicle
- A window is open
- Accessories or clothes are hanging in the vehicle

## Tilt Sensor\*

The tilt sensor activates only when the security system alarm is set. If someone raises the vehicle in an attempt to tow the vehicle or remove the wheels etc., the sensor will activate the alarm.

### ■ To set the security system alarm without activating the tilt sensor



- 1 Ultrasonic/Tilt Sensor **OFF** Button
- 2 Indicator

You can set the security system without activating the tilt sensor.

To turn off the tilt sensor system, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF by pressing the **POWER** button and then press the ultrasonic/tilt sensor **OFF** button.

- ▶ The indicator is on in red.

To turn it on again, press the ultrasonic/tilt sensor **OFF** button.

Tilt sensor is turned on every time you set the security system alarm, even if you turned it off the last time.

### ▶▶ Tilt Sensor\*

Whether the tilt sensor has been activated or not, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter or keyless access system, not the key.

It is possible to confirm whether the vehicle security system was activated without your knowledge. If the security system has been activated, the indicator will blink for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you turn the power system on and transmission is changed other than **[P]**, the indicator will stop blinking after 5 seconds.

If the tilt sensor is malfunctioning or there is another problem, the indicator will come on for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you turn the power system on and transmission is changed other than **[P]**, the indicator will shut off.

Do not set the tilt sensor when the vehicle is lifted or jacked up.



## Super Locking\*

The super locking function disables the lock tabs on all doors.

### ■ To activate the super locking function

- Turn the key in the driver's door towards the vehicle front twice within five seconds.
- Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within five seconds.
- Touch the door lock sensor on the door handle or press the lock button on the tailgate twice within five seconds.

### ■ To cancel the super locking function

Unlock the driver's door with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

#### ▶▶ Super Locking\*

### ⚠ WARNING

No one must be inside the vehicle with the super locking set. Persons locked in can get seriously sick or die from the heat built inside the vehicle if left in the sun.

Make sure there is no one inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

\* Not available on all models

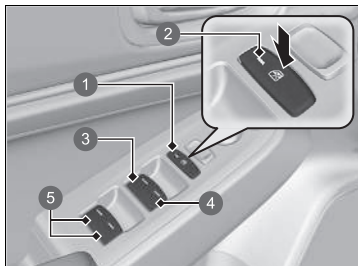
## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

### Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



- 1 Power Window Lock Button
- 2 Indicator
- 3 Driver's Window Switch
- 4 Front Passenger's Window Switch
- 5 Rear Passenger's Window Switch

#### Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

#### Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

### Opening/Closing the Power Windows

## WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Closing driver's door cancels this function.

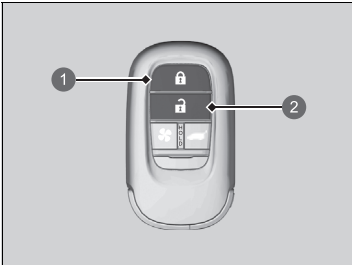
#### Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

## ■ Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote



- ① Lock Button
- ② Unlock Button

**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

**To close:** Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

## ■ Closing the Window with the key



- ① Close

Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

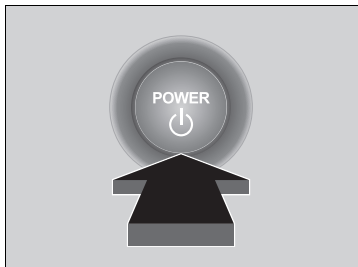
### ☒ Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote

You can turn off or on to open the windows with the keyless remote setting using the audio/information screen.

☒ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

## POWER Button

### ■ Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→VEHICLE OFF.

#### **VEHICLE OFF:**

Vehicle power is turned OFF.

#### **ACCESSORY:**

The audio system and some accessories can be used.

#### **ON**

All accessories can be used.

### ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

When in this mode: The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system. Press the **POWER** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

### ■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

### ⌘ POWER Button

If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

You may become unable to drive if you leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON, draining the 12-volt battery.

When the power mode is set to ON, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY if the **POWER** button is pressed while the transmission is in a position other than **P**.

## ■ Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

### ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

## ⊠ Keyless Remote Reminder

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the power mode or restart the power system. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

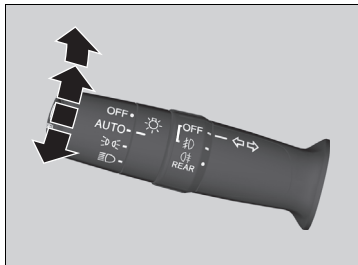
Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

## Lights

### ■ Headlights/Position Lights


The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.




The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

#### ■ Manual operation

##### Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

##### Position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

##### Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the transmission is in **P** and the parking brake is applied.

- ▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:
  - The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
  - The transmission is changed out of **P** and the parking brake is released.

### » Lights



When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

#### » Lights On Indicator P. 116

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN-Regulation No.48 Dover Regulation.

### » Headlights/Position Lights

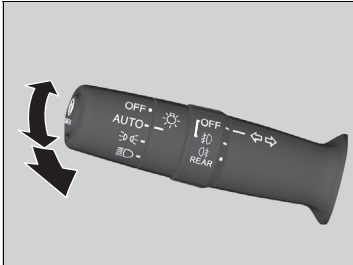
When the position lights are on, the tail and rear licence plate lights will also switch on.

When the light switch is turned to  or  and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

## ■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.

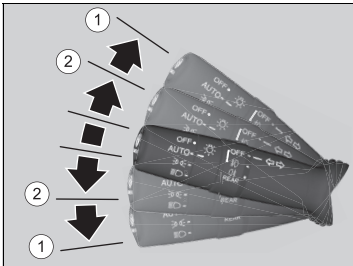


### ■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

- ▶ Release the lever to return to low beams.

## ■ Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

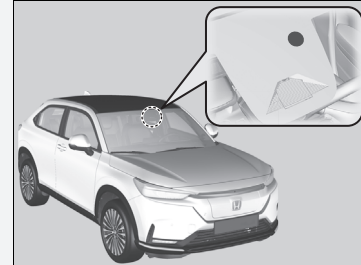
### ■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

- ▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

## ☒ Headlights/Position Lights

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover the light sensor.



Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

If you suspect that the headlights are not positioned properly, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## ☒ Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

- ☒ **Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators**  
P. 115


## ■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

## ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

However, when the switch is in , the position lights remain on.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

### ⌘ Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

### ⌘ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331



## ■ Fog Lights

The fog lights can be used when the power mode is in ON.

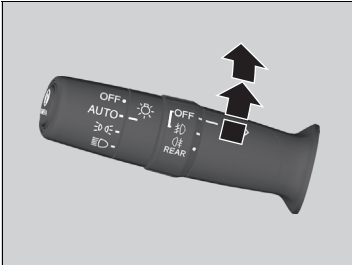
### ■ Front fog lights

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

### ■ Rear fog light

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

### ■ Front and rear fog light switch



#### To turn the front fog lights on:

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the FOG position. The FOG indicator comes on.

#### To turn the front and rear fog lights on:

Rotate the switch one position up from the FOG position. The FOG and REAR indicators come on.

#### To turn the rear fog lights on:

Rotate the switch one position up from the FOG position and then rotate the switch one position down from the FOG position. The REAR indicator stays on.

To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

## ■ Daytime Running Lights

The daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO**.
- The ambient light is bright.

While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the transmission is changed out of **P** and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

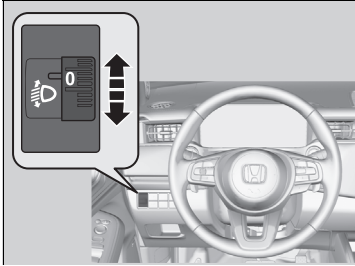
## ▣ Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

The daytime running lights will not switch on if the position lights have been turned on manually.

## Headlight Adjuster



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

### ■ To select the adjusting dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats	2
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	

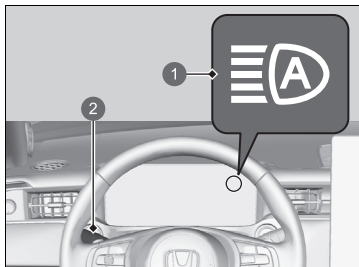
## Auto High-Beam

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

### ■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

#### ■ Activating the system


When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- ① Auto High-Beam Indicator
- ② Light Switch

- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

#### ▶▶ Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

#### ▶▶ Front Wide View Camera P. 478

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

#### How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

#### ▶▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 331

## ■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

### High beam

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25mph) or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.



### Low beam

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h (15mph) or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

### ⊞ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:


- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has been detected a dense fog.

### ■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam


If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

#### Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

- ▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.
- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

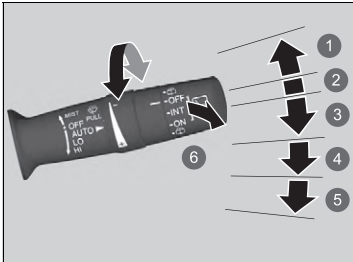
#### Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

- ▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

## Wipers and Washers

### ■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



- ① **MIST**
- ② **OFF**
- ③ **AUTO**
- ④ **LO**: Low speed wipe
- ⑤ **HI**: High speed wipe
- ⑥ Washer

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

#### ■ **MIST**

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

#### ■ **Wiper switch (OFF, AUTO, LO, HI)**

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

#### ■ **Washer**

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

### » Wipers and Washers

#### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

#### NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

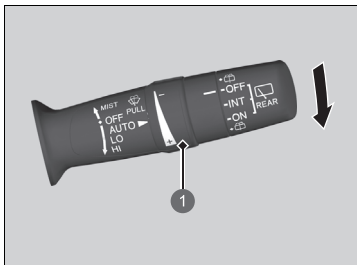
The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

#### NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

## ■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers



- ① Adjustment Ring
  - : Low Sensitivity
  - +: High Sensitivity

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

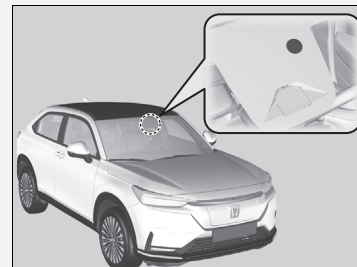
The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

### ■ **AUTO** sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

## ▶▶ Automatic Intermittent Wipers

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



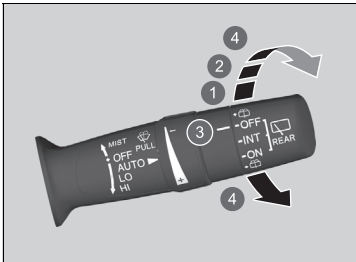
### **NOTICE**

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present



## ■ Rear Wiper/Washer



The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

### ■ Washer (🚿)

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.

Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

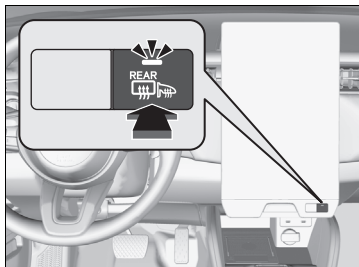
- ❶ INT (Intermittent)
- ❷ ON (Continuous wipe)
- ❸ OFF
- ❹ Washer

### ■ Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to **R** with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
<b>AUTO</b> (Intermittent)	Intermittent
<b>LO</b> (Low speed wipe) <b>HI</b> (High speed wipe)	Continuous

## Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button



Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to demist the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

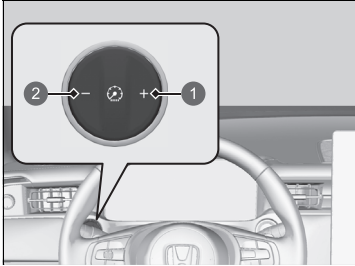
The rear demister and heated door mirror automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

### ⚡ Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

## Brightness Control



- 1 Button
- 2 Button

The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.

- The brightness becomes darker when the ambient light is dark.
- The brightness becomes brighter when the ambient light is bright.

### ■ Adjusting the brightness manually

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control button to adjust instrument panel brightness.

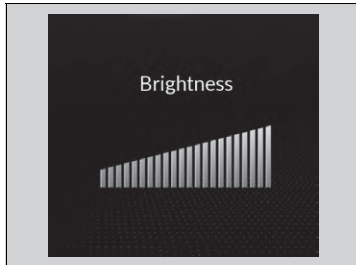
**Brighten:** Press the button.

**Dim:** Press the button.

- ▶ You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

### ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.

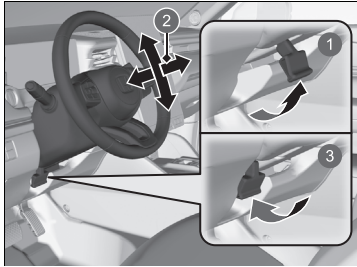


### ☒ Brightness Control

Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



- 1 Release
- 2 Adjust
- 3 Lock

1. While the vehicle is stopped, pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
  - ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is lower left side of the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### **⚠ WARNING**

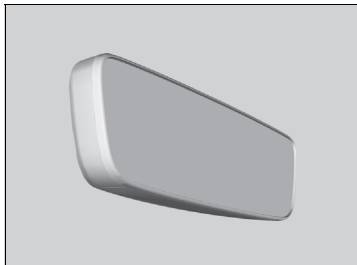
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

#### Interior Rearview Mirror

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

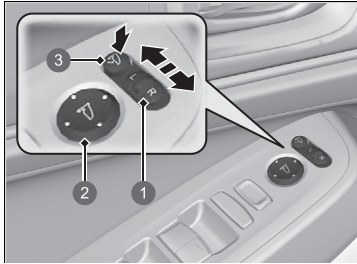
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

➔ **Front Seats** P. 210

#### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in **R**.

## Power Door Mirrors



- 1 Selector Switch
- 2 Adjustment Switch
- 3 Folding Door Mirror Button

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

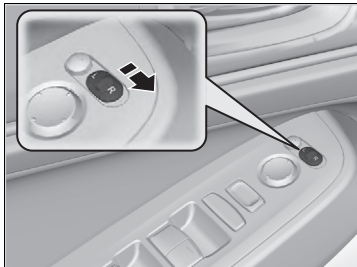
**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

### ■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding door mirror button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

### ■ Reverse Tilt Door Mirror



If activated, the passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into **R**: this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of **R**.

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON and slide the selector switch to the passenger's side.

## ■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

### ■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter, or touch the door lock sensor on the either front door.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

### ■ Folding out the door mirrors

Press the unlock button on the keyless remote, or grab the door handle on the either front door.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

## ⌘ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding door mirror button.

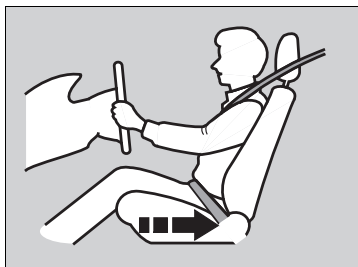
You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

### ⌘ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 331

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

## Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

### Front Seats

## **⚠ WARNING**

**Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.**

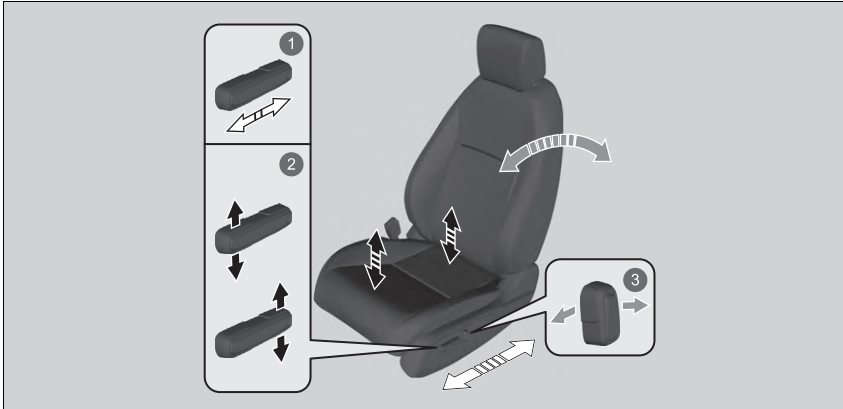
**Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.**

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm (10 inches) between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.



## ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

### ■ Adjusting the front power seats



#### ① Horizontal Position Adjustment

Slide the lever to move the seat.

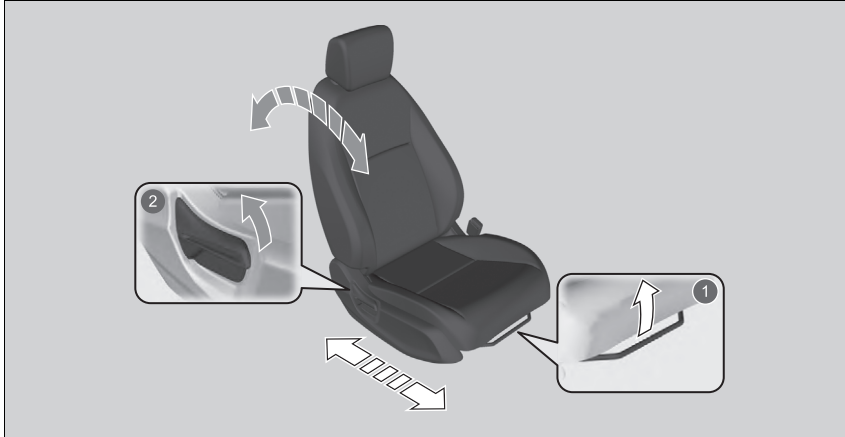
#### ② Height Adjustment (Driver's side only)

Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

#### ③ Seat-back Angle Adjustment

Push forward or pull backward the lever to change the angle.

## ■ Adjusting the front manual seats



### 1 Horizontal Position Adjustment

Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

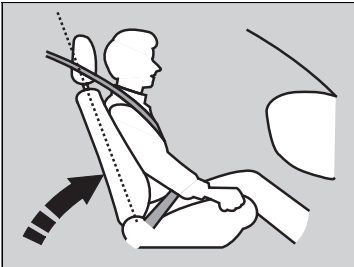
### 2 Seat-back Angle Adjustment

Pull up the lever to change the angle.

## ►► Adjusting the front manual seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

## ▣ Adjusting the Seat-Backs

### ⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

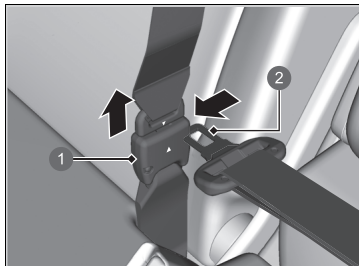
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

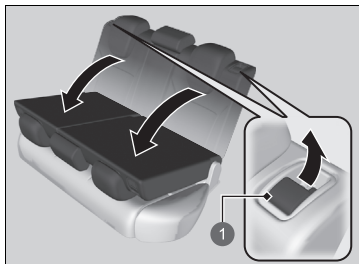
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

## Rear Seats

### Folding Down the Rear Seats



- 1 Anchorage Buckle
- 2 Latch Plate



- 1 Release Lever

1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
  - ▣ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage**  
P. 54
3. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position.

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

### Folding Down the Rear Seats

#### **WARNING**

**Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.**

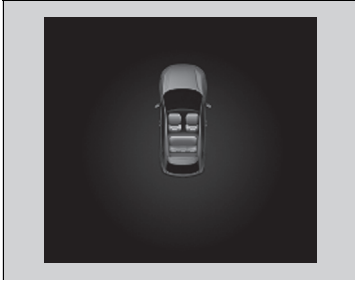
The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

**Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.**

## Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you of the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the vehicle was set to ON.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

### ⊞ Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

#### ⊞ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 331

## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power mode is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

### ►► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

#### **WARNING**

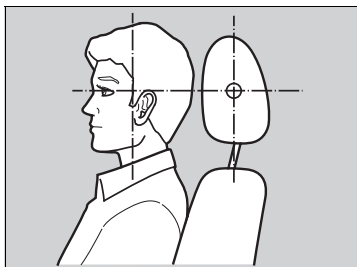
**Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.**

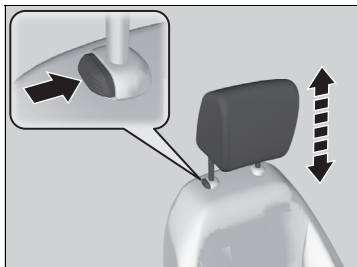
## Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

### ■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions



Position head in the centre of the head restraint.



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

**To raise the head restraint:** Pull it upward.  
**To lower the head restraint:** Push it down while pressing the release button.

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions

## ⚠ WARNING

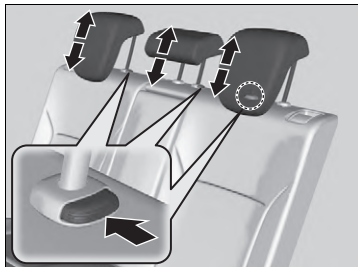
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

## ■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the rear seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

**To raise the head restraint:**

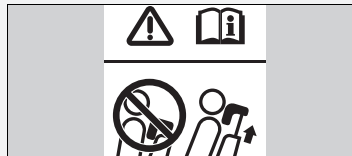
Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.

## ✎ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraint in the rear seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.





## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

### **To remove a head restraint:**

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

### **To reinstall a head restraint:**

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

### ⌘ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

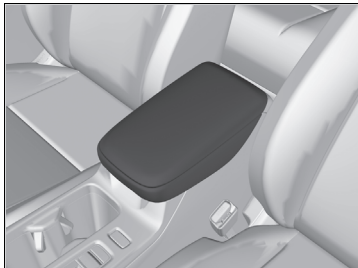
## **⚠ WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

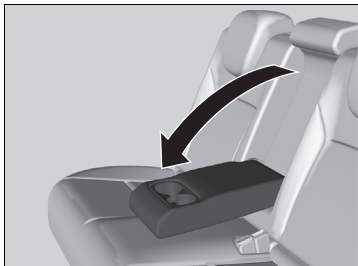
## Armrest

### ■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

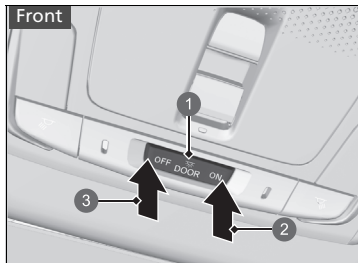
### ■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



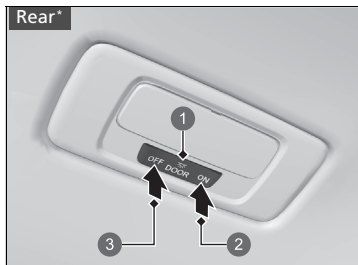
Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switches



- 1 Door Activated Position
- 2 On
- 3 Off



- 1 Door Activated Position
- 2 On
- 3 Off

#### ■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

#### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

#### ▣ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 331

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

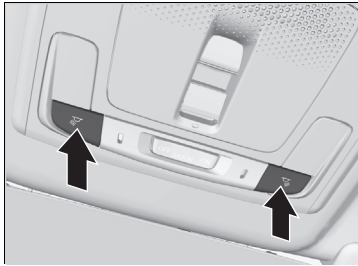
- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

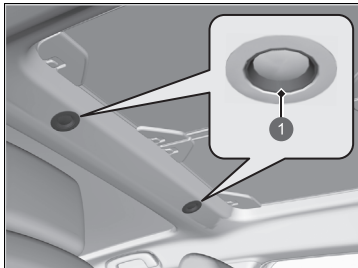
\* Not available on all models

## ■ Map Light Switches



### ■ Front seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the buttons.



### ■ Rear seat\*

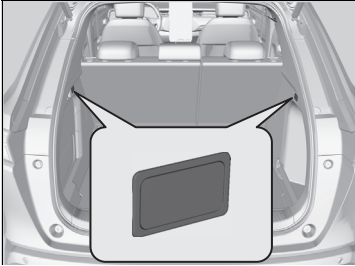
The map lights can be turned on and off by touching the map lights.

① Touch

## » Map Light Switches

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the buttons or touch the rear map lights\*.

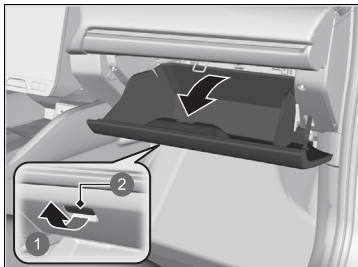
## ■ Luggage Area Lights



The luggage area lights come on when you open the tailgate.

## Storage Items

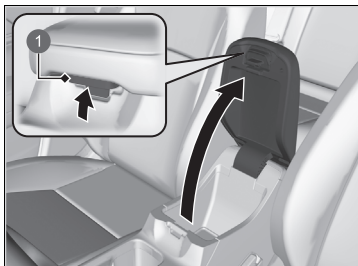
### ■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

- 1 Pull
- 2 Handle

### ■ Console Box



Pull the knob to open the console box.

- 1 Knob

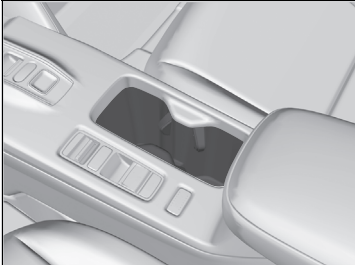
### » Glove Box

## ⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

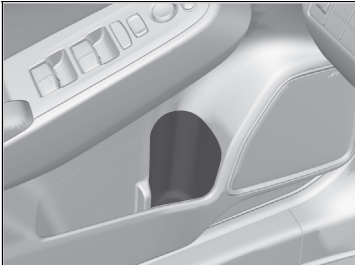
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

## ■ Beverage Holders



### ■ Front seat beverage holders

Located in the console between the front seats.



### ■ Front door side beverage holders

Located on the both of front door side pockets.



### ■ Rear door side beverage holders

Located on the both of rear doors.

## ☒ Beverage Holders

### NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



■ **Rear seat beverage holders**

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

■ **Coat Hooks**



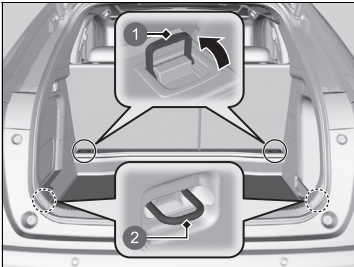
There are coat hooks on the rear left and right grab handles.

▣ **Coat Hooks**

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.



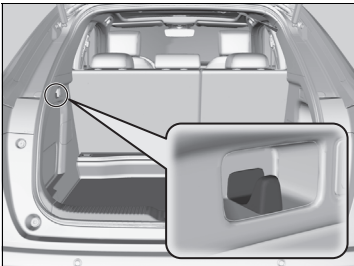
## ■ Tie-down Anchorages



- ① Anchorages
- ② Anchorages\*

The tie-down anchorages on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

## ■ Luggage Hook



The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

### ☒ Tie-down Anchorages

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

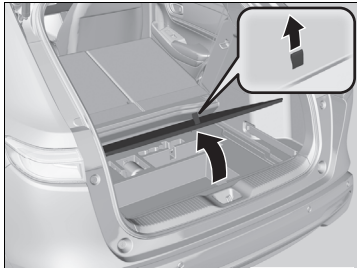
### ☒ Luggage Hook

#### NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the side luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Luggage Storage Area

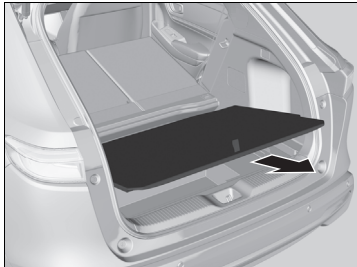


By pushing the rear seat forward and putting the floor lid in the upper position, you can store bulkier items in the luggage area.

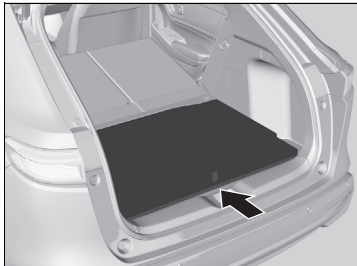
1. Folding down the rear seat.

▣ **Folding Down the Rear Seats** P. 214

2. Pull the strap to open the luggage floor lid.

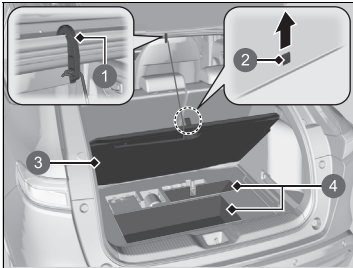


3. Pull the floor lid towards you.



4. Put the floor lid in the upper position.

## ■ Under-floor Storage Area



- ① Hook
- ② Strap
- ③ Luggage Floor Lid
- ④ Luggage Floor Box

1. Pull the strap and open the luggage floor lid.
2. Take out the hook, and hang it onto the tailgate opening.

## ⊠ Under-floor Storage Area

### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not pull out or push in parcels while driving.**

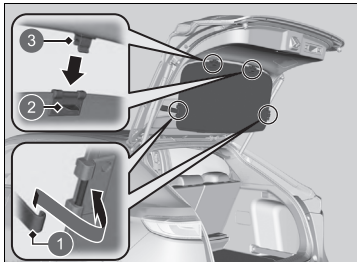
**This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.**

**Do not drive with the lid upright.**

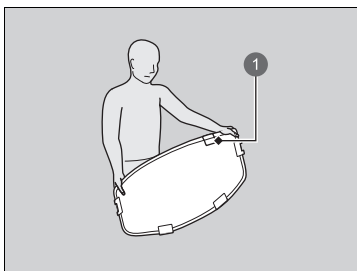
**This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.**

## ■ Luggage Area Cover

The luggage area cover can be removed to give you more luggage room.



- ① Hooks
- ② Tab
- ③ Guide



- ① Tag

### ■ To remove the luggage area cover

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the luggage area cover from hooks on both sides.
3. Remove the cover from the guide while keeping the tab depressed.

Reverse this procedure to install the luggage area cover.

After reinstalling the luggage area cover, make sure it is latched securely.

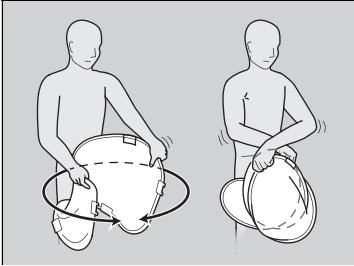
### ■ To store the luggage area cover

1. Hold the corner near the tag on the cover.

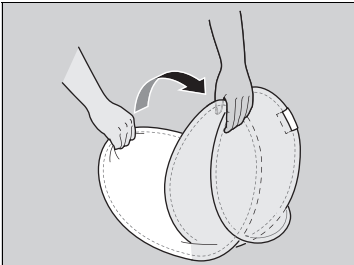
## » Luggage Area Cover

Do not place items on the luggage area cover, or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crush or sudden stop.

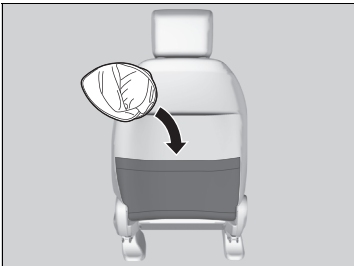
When removing the luggage area cover, hold it firmly with your hands as it may open vigorously. Carefully check the surrounds and slowly open the cover while holding it firmly with both hands.



2. Hold both corners of the luggage area cover with your arms crossed one on the other and fold the cover.



3. Bring both circular halves together in perfect alignment.

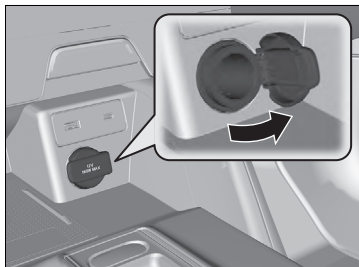


4. Store the luggage area cover in the back pocket of the front seat while keeping it firmly pushed by hand.

## Other Interior Convenience Items

### ■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



### ■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.

### ▶▶ Accessory Power Socket

#### NOTICE


Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

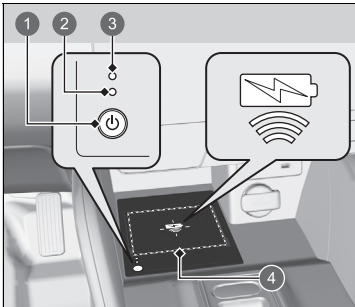
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.


To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the power system on.


When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

## ■ Wireless Charger

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the  mark as follows:



- ①  (Power) Button
- ② Green Indicator
- ③ Amber Indicator
- ④ Charging Area

1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the  (power) button.
  - When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
  - The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
  - Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
  - Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

## ▣ Wireless Charger


### ⚠ CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzene or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.


This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

 appears on the audio/information screen when the device is being charged by the wireless charger.

**■ When charging does not start**

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simultaneously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where  is located.
		The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.


**▶▶ Wireless Charger**

The wireless charger can support up to 15W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

**NOTICE**

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charge area while charging.

The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

“Qi” and  marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and the device to heat up.

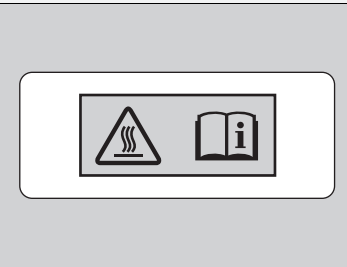


## ▶▶ Wireless Charger

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All doors or the tailgate are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

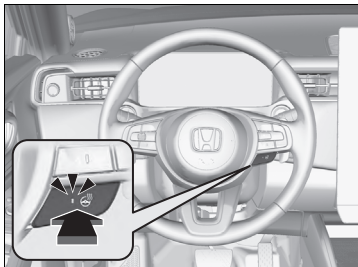


Burn risk:

Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge. The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

### ■ Heated Steering Wheel\*



The power mode must be in ON to use the heated steering wheel.

Press the button on the lower side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

### ▣ Heated Steering Wheel\*

Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

## Front Seat Heaters



The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.



1 Seat Heater Icon

Select seat heater icon:

- Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
- Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
- Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
- Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

## Front Seat Heaters

### ⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lowerlimb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

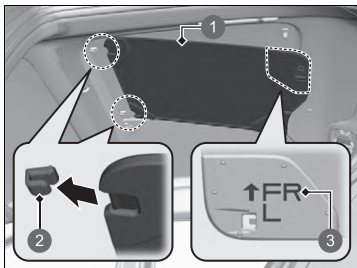
After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

When the **ECON** mode is active and **Heated ECO Mode** setting is **ON**, seat heater functions according to the status of the climate control system. If you want to use only the climate control system, turn the **Heated ECO Mode** to **OFF**.

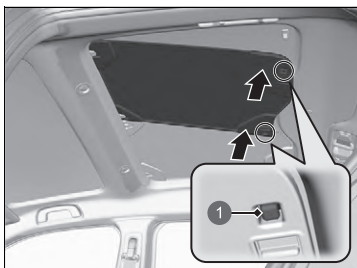
▶ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 391

▶ **Customize the Climate Control System**  
P. 249

## ■ Rear Sunshades\*



- ❶ Rear Sunshade
- ❷ Hooks
- ❸ ↑FR L Mark



- ❶ Lock

### ■ Rear sunshades Installation

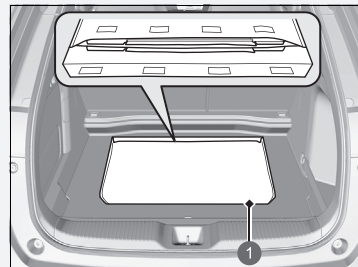
1. Insert the front side into the hooks.
  - Install the rear sunshade as ↑FR mark towards front.

2. Push up the rear side and lock.
  - Push the rear sunshades until you hear a click.

## ▣ Rear Sunshades\*

Park the vehicle in a safe place before installing and removing the rear sunshades. Also, make sure the rear sunshades are securely latched back into place before driving.

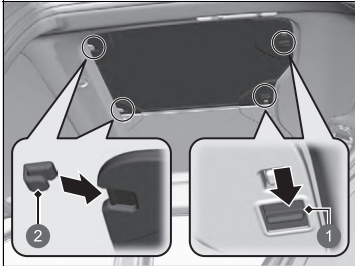
Put the removed rear sunshade in the case and store it in the luggage area.



- ❶ Case

To prevent rear sunshades damage, follow the instruction below.

- Do not place things on top of the case.
- Exercise care so that things around will not hit the case.



### ■ Rear sunshades Removal

1. Push and hold the lever inside and pull down the rear sunshades.
2. Pull out the rear sunshades rearwards and remove it.

- ① Lever
- ② Hooks

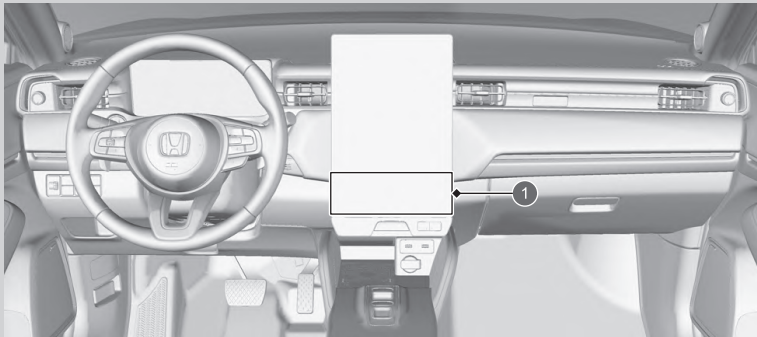
### ■ Sun Visor



The sun visor can be extended horizontally.

## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



1 Climate Control Screen

### Using Automatic Climate Control


If any icons/buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the icons/buttons that was pressed will take priority.

The auto indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the icon/button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** icon is selected.


If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

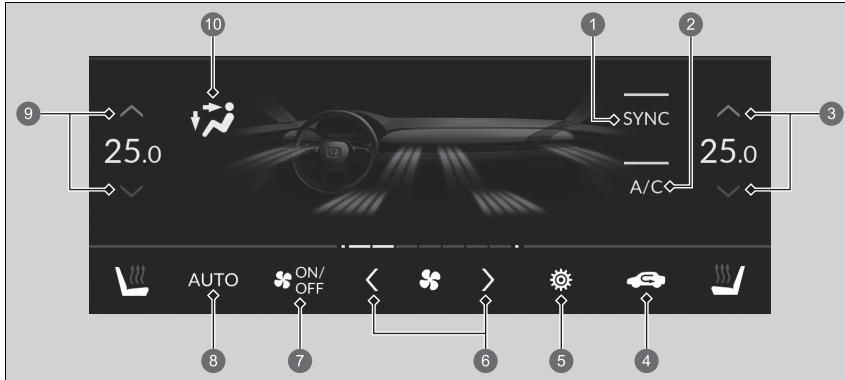
When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.







Selecting the  icon switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

**Left-hand drive type**

Use the system when the power system is on.


1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control icons.
3. Select the  (ON/OFF) icon to cancel.



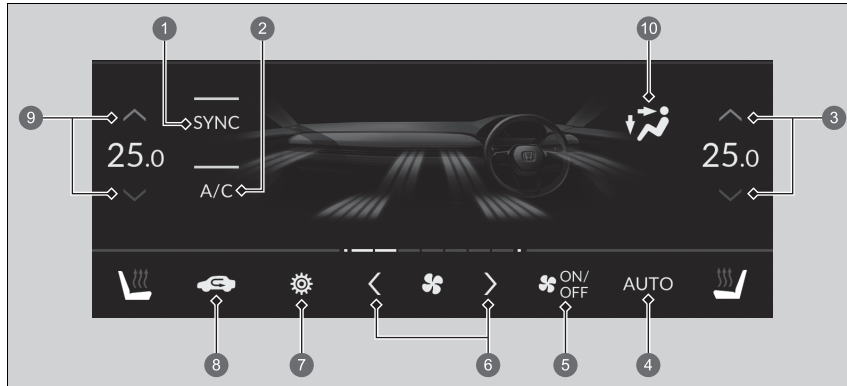
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 <b>SYNC</b> Icon</li> <li>2 <b>A/C</b> Icon</li> <li>3 Passenger's Side Temperature Control Icons</li> <li>4  (Recirculation) Icon</li> <li>5 Customize Icon</li> <li>6 Fan Control Icons</li> <li>7  (ON/OFF) Icon</li> <li>8 <b>AUTO</b> Icon</li> <li>9 Driver's Side Temperature Control Icons</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10 Mode Icon                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•  Air flows from dashboard vents</li> <li>•  Air flows from floor and dashboard vents</li> <li>•  Air flows from floor vents</li> <li>•  Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> |
|--|---|







**Right-hand drive type**

Use the system when the power system is on.

1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control icons.
3. Select the  (ON/OFF) icon to cancel.


Controls



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 <b>SYNC</b> Icon</li> <li>2 <b>A/C</b> Icon</li> <li>3 Driver's Side Temperature Control Icons</li> <li>4 <b>AUTO</b> Icon</li> <li>5  (ON/OFF) Icon</li> <li>6 Fan Control Icons</li> <li>7 Customize Icon</li> <li>8  (Recirculation) Icon</li> <li>9 Passenger's Side Temperature Control Icons</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10 Mode Icon                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•  Air flows from dashboard vents</li> <li>•  Air flows from floor and dashboard vents</li> <li>•  Air flows from floor vents</li> <li>•  Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> |
|--|---|



### ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Select the  (recirculation) icon and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

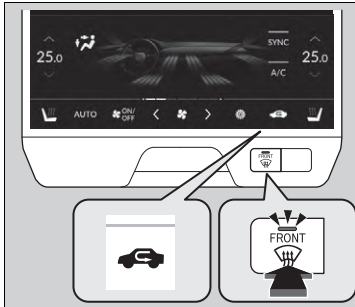
Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.


#### ⌘ Using Automatic Climate Control


The High Voltage battery level being low may reduce the climate control system performance.

*Continued*

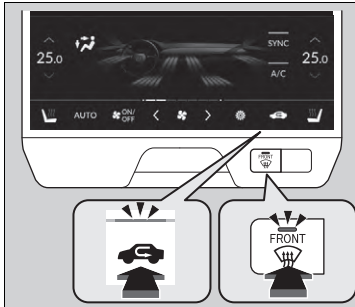
## ■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



Pressing the  (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

## ■ To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the  button (indicator on).
2. Select the  icon (indicator on).

## ►► Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

## ►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## ■ Synchronization Mode

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Select the **SYNC** icon.
  - The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control icons.


Select the **SYNC** icon or adjust the interior temperature using the passenger's side temperature control icons to return to dual mode.



- 1 **SYNC** Icon
- 2 Passenger's Side Temperature Control Icons
- 3 Driver's Side Temperature Control Icons

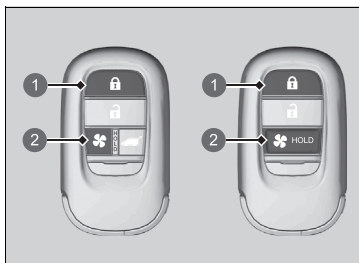
## ☒ Synchronization Mode

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

When you press the  button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

## Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning

You can operate the climate control system from outside the vehicle.



- 1 Lock Button
- 2 Climate Button

### To turn on the system

1. Press the lock button.
  - ▶ Some exterior lights flash.
2. Within about five seconds, press and hold the climate button.
  - ▶ Some exterior lights flash.
  - ▶ After a few seconds, some exterior lights flash six times and the climate control system is turned on.

### To turn off the system

- Press and hold the climate button.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash and the climate control system is turned off.

## Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning

### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure that no one is inside the vehicle when you use the remote climate control system. After a certain period of time has elapsed, the system shuts off temporarily. During this time, the interior of the vehicle may heat up or cool down depending on ambient temperatures. If a child is left inside the vehicle, extreme temperature exposure can result in death or serious injury of the child.

The climate control system does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to ON.
- The High Voltage battery level is low.

The climate control system automatically turned off when any of the following conditions are met.

- The system has been operated for more than time your set.
- The High Voltage battery level becomes low.
- A door or bonnet is opened.
- The power mode is set to ON.

**Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning**

The following functions also operate according to the temperature:

When it is warm outside:

- The air conditioning is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The front defroster is activated as necessary when automatic defrosting is selected.
- The rear demister is activated.
- The front seat heater is activated.
- **Front Seat Heaters** P. 237
- The heated steering wheel\* is activated.

**Heated Steering Wheel**\* P. 236

Depending on the charging environment, the charge amount of High Voltage battery may be reduced even if the charging connector is plugged in.

You can adjust the pre-conditioning temperature, change the operation time, and turn off the automatic defroster by using the audio/information screen.

**EV Menu** P. 312


You can customize the settings of the climate control system schedule.


**EV Menu** P. 312


\* Not available on all models

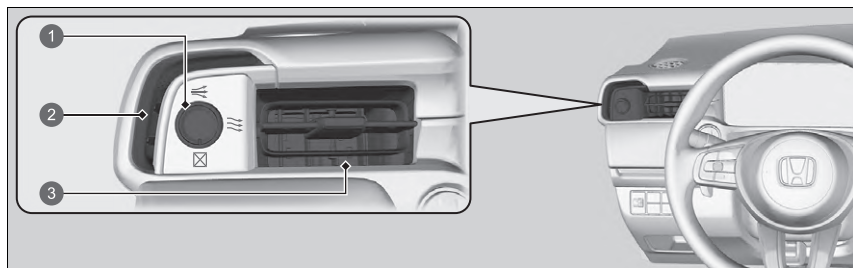
## ■ Selecting the Desired Air Outlet

You can select the desired air outlet by turning the dial to the respective position.

 selects outlet **2**.

 selects outlet **3**.

 selects blockage of both **2** and **3**.



**1** Dial

**2** Air Outlet

**3** Air Outlet

## ■ Customize the Climate Control System

Select the customize icon and select a setting item.



1 Customize Icon

### ■ Heated ECO Mode

The **Heated ECO Mode** is **OFF** as the factory default setting. When the **Heated ECO Mode** turned **ON** and the drive mode is set to **ECON** mode, the front seat heater operate automatically depending on the temperature inside the car.

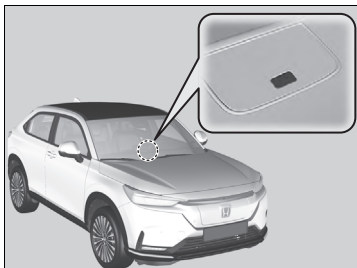
- ▶ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 391
- ▶ **Front Seat Heaters** P. 237

## ✕ Customize the Climate Control System

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Transmission is in **P**.

## Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.





# Features

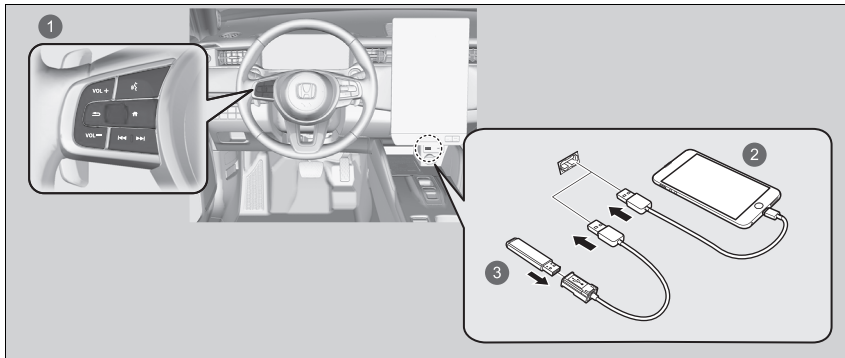
This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

<b>Audio System</b>		
About Your Audio System .....	252	
Audio System Theft Protection .....	253	
<b>Display Audio</b>		
Start Up .....	254	
Basic Operation .....	255	
On-Board Owner's Manual .....	260	
Voice Control Operation .....	261	
Audio/Information Screen .....	264	
Clock Setup .....	273	
Adjusting the Sound .....	276	
Display Setup .....	277	
System Updates .....	278	
Playing FM Radio .....	283	
Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) .....	288	
Playing an iPod .....	291	
Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	293	
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> Audio.....	297	
Wi-Fi Connection .....	300	
Apple CarPlay .....	302	
Android Auto™.....	308	
EV Menu.....	312	
Power Flow.....	317	
Customized Features .....	321	
Defaulting All the Settings .....	340	
Hands-Free Telephone System .....	341	
<b>Audio Error Messages</b> .....	357	
<b>General Information on the Audio System</b> .....	358	
<b>Emergency Call (eCall)</b> .....	366	

## About Your Audio System

The audio system features FM radio and Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) service. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface.




- ① Remote Controls
- ② iPod
- ③ USB Flash Drive

## Audio System Theft Protection

---

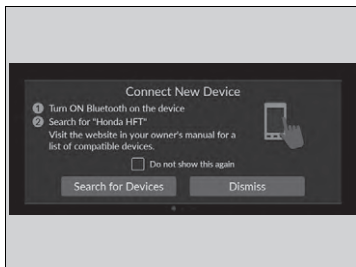
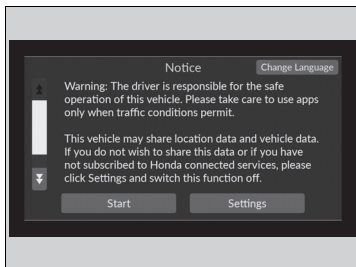
The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the 12-volt battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

### ■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Select and hold  **Audio** for more than two seconds.
  - ▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

## Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the disclaimer will be displayed.



Select **Start**.

- ▶ If you do not select **Start**, the system will automatically be switched the home screen after a certain period of time.
- ▶ If there is no registered device, select **Start** and the *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> pairing screen will be displayed.
- ▶ If you want to change the settings for data upload, select **Settings**, then select the ON/OFF settings on the **Location and vehicle data sharing** screen.

■ **To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
2. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
  - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
  - ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

### Start Up

#### Location and vehicle data sharing

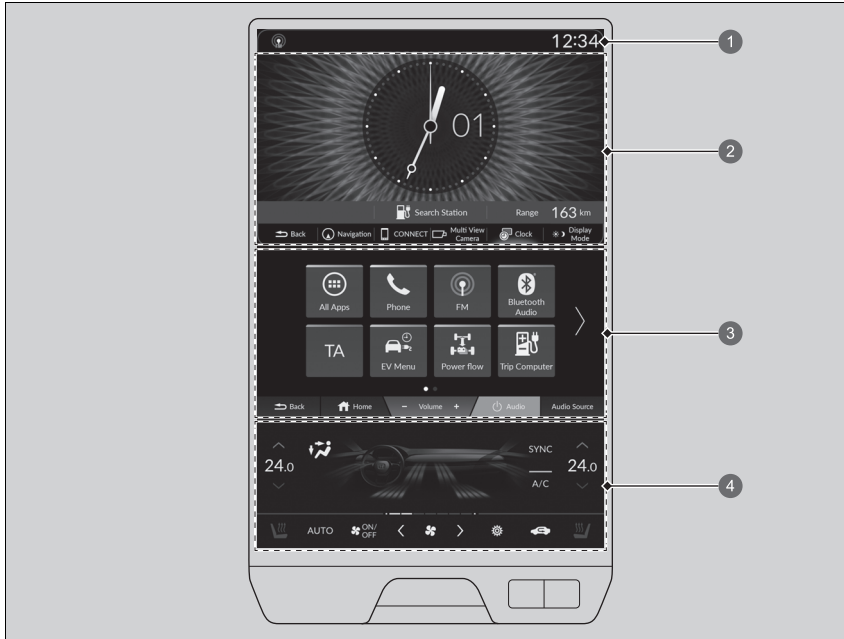
**ON:** Available the data communication.

**OFF:** Not available the data communication.

## Basic Operation

### ■ Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



- ① Header Area
- ② Upper Screen
- ③ Middle Screen
- ④ Climate Control Screen

Continued

**Header Area:** Displays this audio system's status.

### Upper Screen

➤ **Upper Screen** P. 264

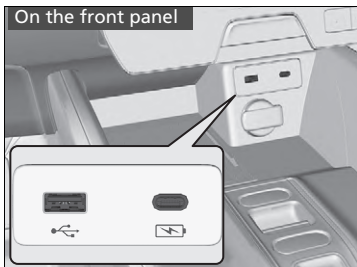
### Middle Screen

➤ **Middle Screen** P. 266

**Climate Control Screen:** Displays the vehicle's climate control system.

➤ **Climate Control System** P. 240

## USB Ports



### ■ On the front panel (USB-A)

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

- ▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

### ■ On the front panel (USB-C)

The USB port (3.0A) is only for charging devices.

- ▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.

## USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

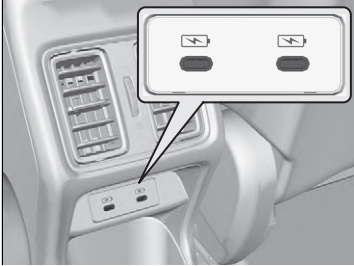
### USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A/3.0A of power. It does not output 2.5A/3.0A unless requested by the device.

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

On the back of the console compartment

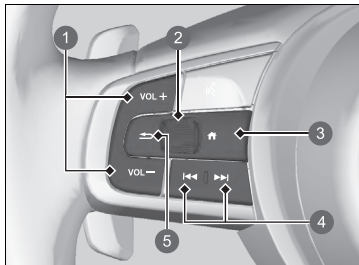


### ■ On the back of the console compartment

The USB ports (3.0A) are only for charging devices.

- ▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

## ■ Audio Remote Controls



- ① **VOL +** / **VOL -** (Volume) Buttons
- ② Left Selector Wheel
- ③ (Home) Button
- ④ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- ⑤ (Back) Button

### **VOL +** / **VOL -** (Volume) Buttons

**Press VOL +**: To increase the volume.

**Press VOL -**: To decrease the volume.

### **Left Selector Wheel**

- When selecting the audio mode

Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

## ▶▶ Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the (back) button for the driver information interface to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.













**Roll up or down:**

To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

FM/DAB/iPod/USB/*Bluetooth*® Audio/Apps (Apple CarPlay/Android Auto)

▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

**⏮/⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons**

- When listening to the radio
  - Press** : To select the next preset radio station.
  - Press** : To select the previous preset radio station.
  - Press and hold** : To select the next strong station.
  - Press and hold** : To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  - ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  - Press** : To skip to the next song.
  - Press** : To go back to the previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  - Press and hold** : To skip to the next folder.
  - Press and hold** : To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to an iPod:
  - Press and hold** : To skip to the next song.
  - Press and hold** : To go back to the previous song.

## On-Board Owner's Manual

You can view the content of the owner's manual on the Display Audio.

### ■ Open the Owner's Manual

1. Select  **All Apps**.
2. Select **Owner's Manual**.

### ■ Install/Update the Owner's Manual

When you can install or update the owner's manual, the notification will be sent automatically.

To update:

1. Tap the notification.
  - ▶ The version screen will display.
2. Select items to be updated.
3. Tap **Update**.

If you unselect an item on the version screen, you will not receive any notifications for it.

### ▶▶ On-Board Owner's Manual


This function does not cover all languages available for the Display Audio.

Changing the language of the Display Audio will also change the language of the owner's manual. If the owner's manual is not available or installed in that language, the owner's manual will default to English.

### ▶▶ Install/Update the Owner's Manual

There may be differences in the displayed content depending on the version of the owner's manual.

If the owner's manual is not installed yet, you can install it via Wi-Fi.


 **Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot**  
P. 300

For languages except English, German, French, Italian and Spanish

If you install the owner's manual in a new language, the owner's manual you previously downloaded will be removed.

## Voice Control Operation

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.

The voice control system uses the  (talk) button on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

### Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.



The system recognises only certain commands.

Available voice commands.

 **Voice Portal Screen** P. 262

- Close the windows.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a clear, natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

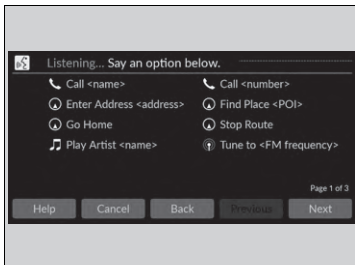
### Voice Control Operation


When you press the  button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the  button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

Languages that the voice control system recognises are English, German, French, Spanish, and Italian.

*Continued*

## ■ Voice Portal Screen



When the  (talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.

For a complete list of commands, say “*Help*” after the beep.

Depending on the selected mode, the displayed commands are different on the voice portal screen. The commands recognised are the same regardless of which screen is selected.

Normal Mode: A list of example commands is displayed to quickly complete your desired function.

Assist Mode: A list of basic commands is displayed to guide you step by step through the voice menu.

You can change the mode on the **General Settings** screen.

➔ **Voice Control** P. 330

The system only recognises the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free-form voice commands are not recognised.

## ■ General Commands

When the voice portal screen is displayed, it will change to the top screen of each function by using the global commands.

- *Music Search*
- *FM*
- *Navigation*
- *Phone*

## ■ Phone Commands

When the system recognises a phone command, the screen will change to the dedicated phone voice recognition screen. These commands can only be used when a phone is connected.

## ■ Phone Commands

- *Call <name>*
- *Call <number>*

The system only recognises contact names stored in the phonebook of your phone. If a full name is registered in the first name field, the system will recognise the first name and last name as one contact name.

Phone commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

## ■ Audio Commands

When the system recognises an audio command, the screen will change to the dedicated audio voice recognition screen.

## ■ FM Commands

- *Tune to <FM frequency>*

## ■ iPod Commands

- *List Album* <name>
- *List Artist* <name>
- *List Genre* <name>
- *List Playlist* <name>
- *Play* <artist> <album>
- *Play*
- *Play Album* <name>
- *Play Artist* <name>
- *Play Genre* <name>
- *Play Music* <text:media\_combo>
- *Play Playlist* <name>
- *Play Song* <name>

## ■ USB Commands

- *List Album* <name>
- *List Artist* <name>
- *List Playlist* <name>
- *Play* <artist> <album>
- *Play*
- *Play Album* <name>
- *Play Artist* <name>
- *Play Music* <text:media\_combo>
- *Play Playlist* <name>
- *Play Song* <name>

## ■ Navigation Commands

The screen changes to the navigation screen.

📖 **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## ■ Standard Commands

- *Voice Help*
- *Cancel*
- *Back*

Voice Help provides guidance for the current screen.

## ■ List Commands

- *Previous*
- *Next*
- *Yes*
- *No*

## Audio/Information Screen

### ■ Upper Screen

Displays the navigation, smartphone connection, multi-view camera\*, and clock screen.



- ① Search Station
- ② Range
- ③ Display Mode
- ④ Clock
- ⑤ Multi View Camera\*
- ⑥ CONNECT
- ⑦ Navigation
- ⑧ Back

### ▶▶ Audio/Information Screen

#### Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 321

**Search Station:** Searches a charging station.

▶ **See the Navigation System Manual**

**Range:** Displays the driving range.

**Display Mode:** Select to change the screen brightness.

**Clock:** Displays the clock.

**Multi View Camera\*:** Displays the multi-view camera system screen.

▶ **Multi-View Camera\* P. 504**

**CONNECT:** Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

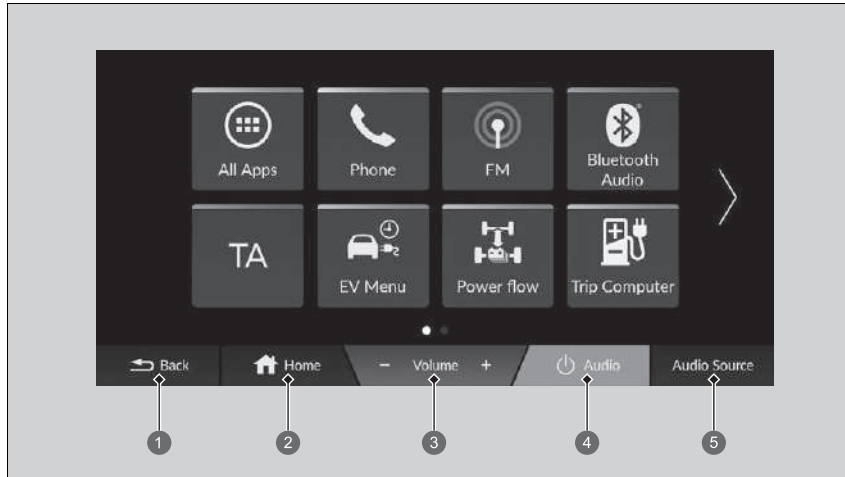
**Navigation:** Displays the navigation screen.

▶ **See the Navigation System Manual**

**Back:** Select to go back to the previous upper screen.

## ■ Middle Screen

Displays the audio status. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.



- 1 **Back** Icon
- 2 **Home** Icon
- 3 **Volume +/-** Icons
- 4 **Audio** Icon
- 5 **Audio Source** Icon

**Back** Icon: Select to go back to the previous middle screen.

**Home** Icon: Select to go to the home screen.

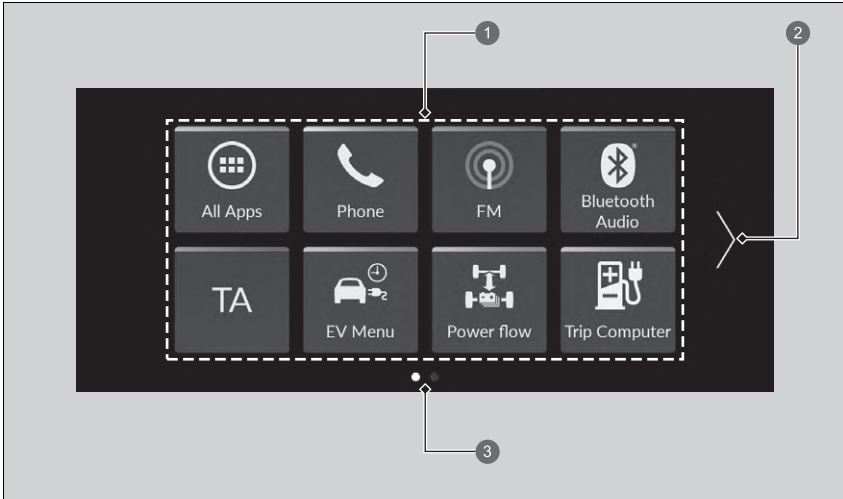
**Volume +/-** Icons: Select to adjust the volume.

**Audio** Icon: Select to turn the audio on and off.

**Audio Source** Icon: Select to change the audio source.





## ■ App Shortcut Function



- ① App Shortcut Icons
- ② Arrow
- ③ Page Indicator

### ■ To move to the next screen

Selecting  or , or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

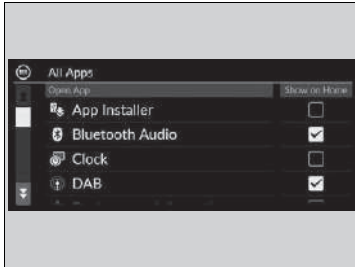
## ▶▶ App Shortcut Function

The home screen can be added up to 6 pages.

Select **Home** to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

### ■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select the box checked on the desired apps.

### ►► To add app icons on the home screen

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

► **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 340

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

► **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 340

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

## ■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



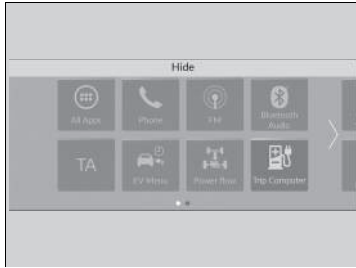
1. Select **Home**.
2. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **Done**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ▶▶ To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

## ■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select **Home**.
2. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
  - ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
4. Select **Done**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ▶▶ To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

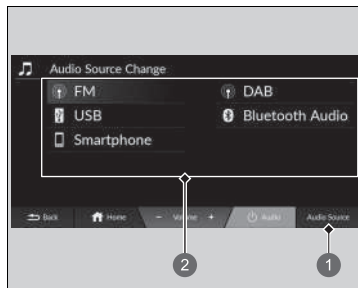
## Status Area



1. Select the system status icon.
  - ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Select **Back** on the upper screen or select the system status icon to close the area.

- 1 System Status Icon
- 2 Status Area

## ■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select **Audio Source** on the middle screen, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

- ① **Audio Source** Icon
- ② Source List Icons

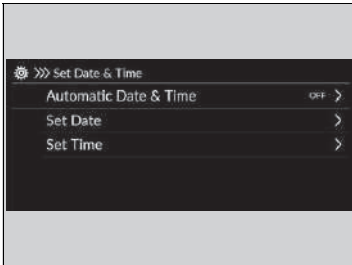
## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

## Clock Setup

### ■ Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.



1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:


7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:

7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the time.

### ▣ Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

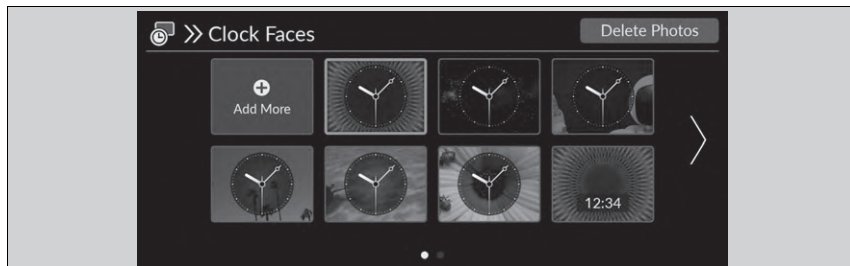
You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the upper screen, or  **All Apps**.

1. Touch the clock on the screen.  
The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.

▣ **System** P. 322

## ■ Clock Wallpaper Setup



### ■ Import clock wallpaper

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.

▶ **USB Ports** P. 256

2. Select **Clock** on the upper screen.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Clock Faces**.

5. Select **Add More**.

▶ The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive are displayed on the list.

6. Select a desired picture to import.

▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.

7. Select **OK**.

▶ The selected pictures are displayed.

8. Select **Transfer**.

▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

### ▶▶ Clock Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 554 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.



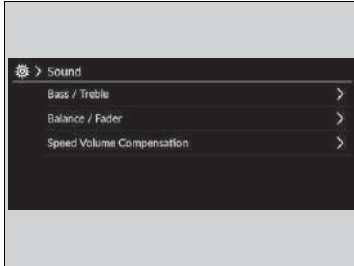
### ■ Select clock wallpaper

1. Select **Clock** on the upper screen.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock Faces**.
4. Select a desired picture to set.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
5. Select **Save**.
  - ▶ The clock screen which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

### ■ Delete clock wallpaper

1. Select **Clock** on the upper screen.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock Faces**.
4. Select **Delete Photos**.
5. Select a desired picture to delete.
  - ▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
6. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
7. Select **Delete**.
  - ▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

## Adjusting the Sound



1. Select **Home**.
2. Select an audio source icon.
3. Select **Sound**.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Bass / Treble:** Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Balance / Fader:** Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation:** Sets the amount of volume increase.

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The **Speed Volume Compensation (SVC)** adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**, and **Speed Volume Compensation**, select **Default** on each setting screen.

## Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness.

### Switching Display Mode Manually



Select **Display Mode**.

- The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.
- Select or to adjust the brightness.
- Select **Display OFF** to turn off Audio/Information screen. To turn on the screen, select **Home, Back, Audio, Audio Source** or touch anywhere on the screen.

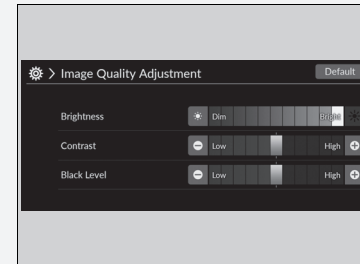
### Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by sliding or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.



## System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, or with a USB device.


The audio system's firmware can be also updated with the telematics control unit (TCU) through the subscription-based service.

### How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

1. Select **Home**.

2. Select **System Updates**.

- ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select  **All Apps**.
- ▶ The system will check for updates.
- ▶ If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.

 **Status Area** P. 271

3. Select **Download**.

- ▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.

4. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.

- ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

### How to Update

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that require login or agreement the terms of use on the browser.

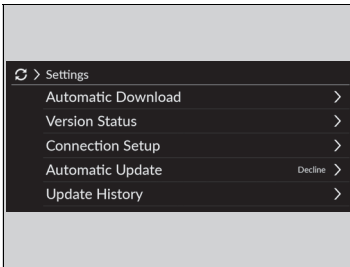
Your download will be cancelled if:

- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You turn off the power system when the 12-volt battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

For the 12-volt battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

## System Updates Settings




The following settings can be set.

- **Automatic Download**
- **Version Status**
- **Connection Setup**
- **Automatic Update**
- **Update History**


### Automatic download settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **System Updates**.
  - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select  **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Automatic Download**.
5. Select the access point, then select **Enable**.
  - ▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Disable**.


### View a version and update status

Use the following procedure to confirm the version and update status.

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **System Updates**.
  - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select  **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Version Status**.


### ■ Connection setup

Use the following procedure to connect to the Internet via a Wi-Fi network.

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **System Updates**.
  - If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select  **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
  - To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
  - If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
8. Select **Connect**.


### ■ Automatic update settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic update setting.

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **System Updates**.
  - If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select  **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Automatic Update**.
5. Select **Accept**.
  - If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Decline**.


### ■ View the update history

Use the following procedure to confirm the update history.


1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **System Updates**.
  - If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select  **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Update History**.

## ■ How to Update Wirelessly

### ■ Wireless connection mode setup



1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **System Updates**.
  - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select  **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
  - ▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
  - ▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
8. Select **Connect**.

### ■ How to update


1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **System Updates**.
  - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select  **All Apps**.
3. Select **via Wireless**.
4. Select **Download**.
  - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
5. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
  - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

## ■ How to Update with a USB Device

### ■ Download the update files from the server

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **System Updates**.
  - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select  **All Apps**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
  - ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
  - ▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
    - ▶  **USB Ports** P. 256
6. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
  - ▶ Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to <https://usb.honda.com> for instructions.

### ■ Update the audio system

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
  - ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
  - ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
    - ▶  **USB Ports** P. 256
6. Select **Install Now**.
  - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

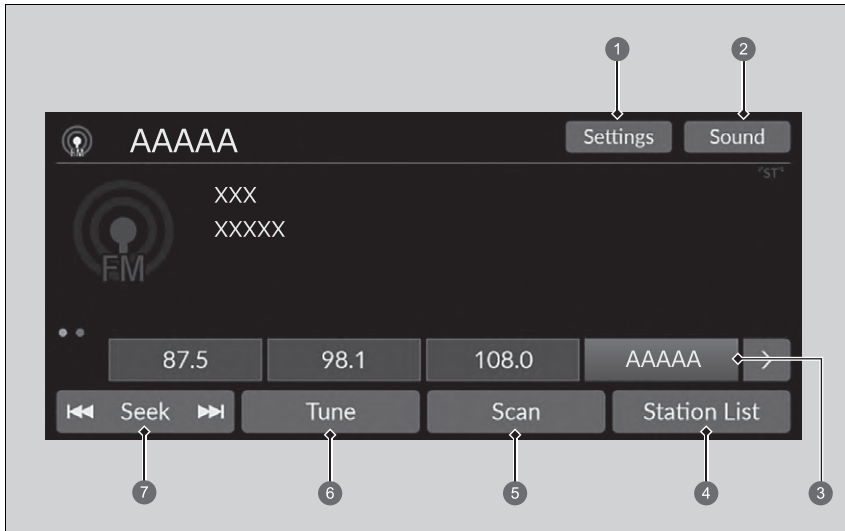
### ▶▶ How to Update with a USB Device

A FAT32-formatted USB device between 8GB and 32GB in size with at least 8GB of free space is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.



## Playing FM Radio



- ① Settings Icon
- ② Sound Icon
- ③ Preset Icons
- ④ Station List Icon

- ⑤ Scan Icon
- ⑥ Tune Icon
- ⑦ Seek Icon

## ■ Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
  - ▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

## ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.



1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or **Back** on the middle screen.


## ■ Seek

Selects  or  to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

## ▶▶ Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode

Roll up or down to select  (audio) on the left selector wheel.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 258

You can store 12 FM stations into preset memory.

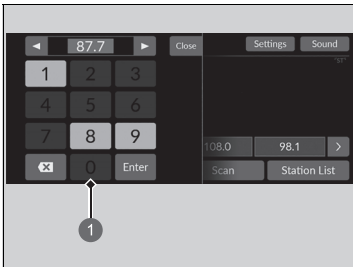
## ■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

📖 **Adjusting the Sound** P. 276

## ■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.



① On-screen Keyboard

1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

### ⌘ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

You can tune the range of FM frequency between 87.5 to 108.0MHz.

◀▶ **icons:**  
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

### ■ Traffic announcement (TA)

The TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode while the function is on. The last tuned station must be an RDS capable traffic program station.

**To turn the function on:** Select **TA**. When a traffic announcement begins, the information screen appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

- ▶ If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, select **Stop**.

**To turn the function off:** Select **TA** again.

## ☒ Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

## ☒ Traffic announcement (TA)

The **TA** indicator appears on the header area while the TA standby function is on.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Selecting **TA** while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

## Settings

Changes the RDS settings.

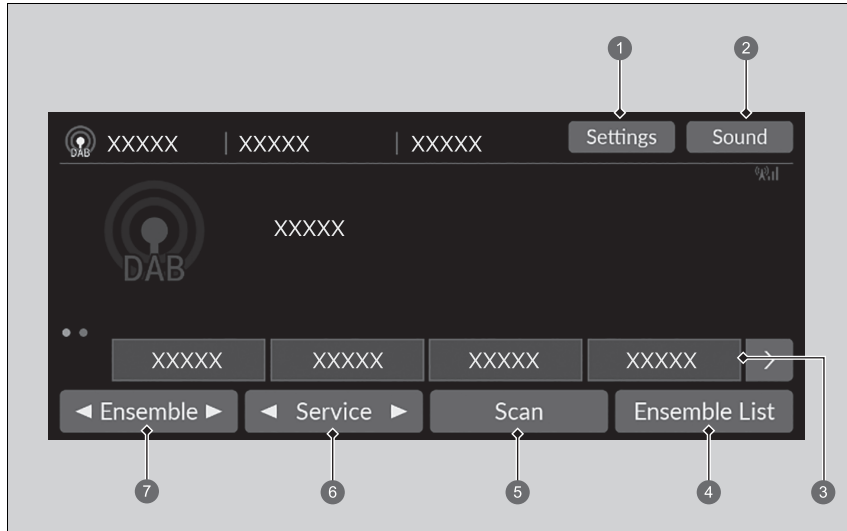
### 1. Settings.

2. Select an option.

- **TA-Information:** Turns on and off the traffic information. (**ON/OFF**\*1)
- **AF:** Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same program you enter different regions. (**ON**\*1/**OFF**)
- **REG:** Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. (**ON**\*1/**OFF**)
- **NEWS:** Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news program. (**ON/OFF**\*1)

\*1: Default Setting

## Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)



- ① Settings Icon
- ② Sound Icon
- ③ Preset Icons
- ④ Ensemble List Icon
- ⑤ Scan Icon
- ⑥ Service Icons
- ⑦ Ensemble Icons

## ■ Preset Memory

Tunes the preset frequency.

To store a service:

1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
  - ▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

## ■ Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.

1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select the ensemble.

## ■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.

1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

## ■ Ensemble

Tunes the ensemble.

1. Select ◀ to ▶ the tune ensemble.
2. Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until a receivable ensemble is found.


## ■ Service

Tunes the service component.

To tune it, select ◀ or ▶.

## ☒ Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode

Roll up or down to select  (audio) on the left selector wheel.

☒ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 258

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.

To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or **Back** on the middle screen.

## ■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

➤ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 276

## ■ Settings

Changes the DAB settings.

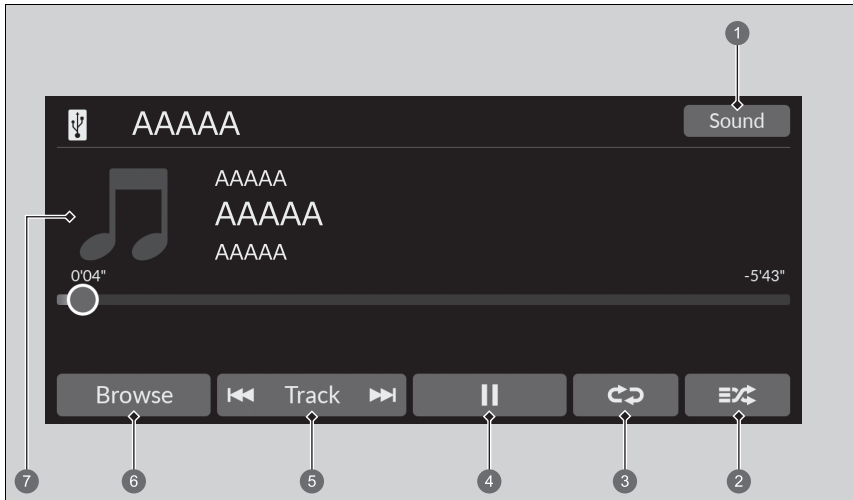
- 1. Settings.**
2. Select the option you want to change.



## Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

➤ **USB Ports** P. 256



- ➊ **Sound** Icon
- ➋ Shuffle Icon
- ➌ Repeat Icon
- ➍ Play/Pause Icon
- ➎ **Track** Icons
- ➏ **Browse** Icon
- ➐ Cover Art

### How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

### ▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➤ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 357

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone or a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

### ■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

#### Shuffle

 **Shuffle off:** Shuffle mode to off.

 **Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

#### Repeat

 **Repeat off:** Repeat mode to off.



 **Repeat Song:** Repeats the current song.

 **Repeat all:** Repeats the all songs.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

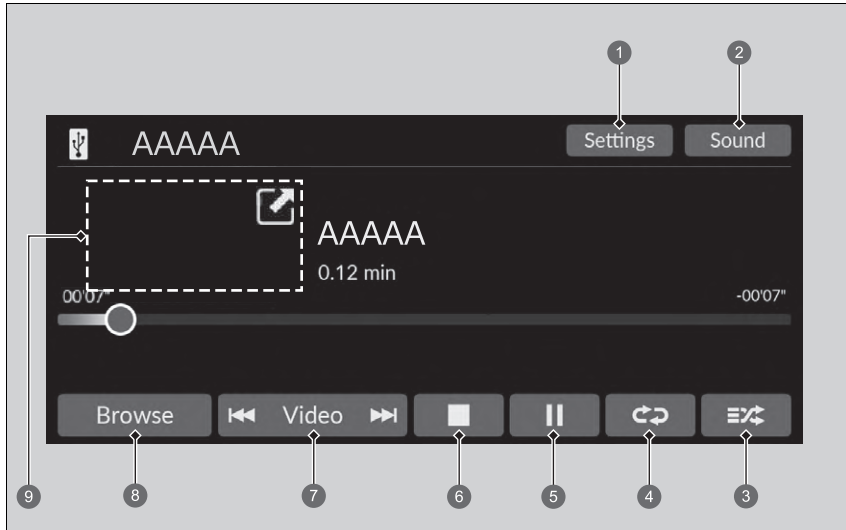
## ■ How to Change a Song

You can select  or  to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

📌 **USB Ports** P. 256



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❶ <b>Settings Icon</b> (Playing a video)</li> <li>❷ <b>Sound Icon</b></li> <li>❸ <b>Random Icon</b></li> <li>❹ <b>Repeat Icon</b></li> <li>❺ <b>Play/Pause Icon</b></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❻ <b>Stop Icon</b> (Playing a video)</li> <li>❼ <b>Track/Video Icons</b></li> <li>❽ <b>Browse Icon</b></li> <li>❾ <b>Cover Art</b> (Playing a music)/<br/><b>Mini Player</b> (Playing a video)</li> </ul> |
|---|--|

### ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.

When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC\*1, FLAC, PCM/WAVE

When playing a video file: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

## ■ How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select **Current Playlist, Music, or Video**.
3. Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

- ▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 358

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

- ▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 357

## How to Select a Play Mode


You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.


### Random/Repeat

Repeatedly select the random or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

#### Random

 (random off): Random mode to off.


 (random all files): Plays all files in random order.

 (random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

#### Repeat

 (repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

 (repeat file): Repeats the current file.

 (repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

### When playing a video file

 (stop): Select to stop a file.



 / : Select  to shrink a video screen. Select  to expand a video screen.

### To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

## How to Change a File

### Track/Video Icons

You can select  or  to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

## ■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

- ▶ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 276

## ■ Settings

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

### 1. Settings.

2. Select an option.

- **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Default**. (**Brightness/Contrast/Black Level/Colour/Tint**).
- **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original/Normal\*1/Full/Zoom**)
- **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper right\*1/Upper left/Lower right/Lower left/OFF**)

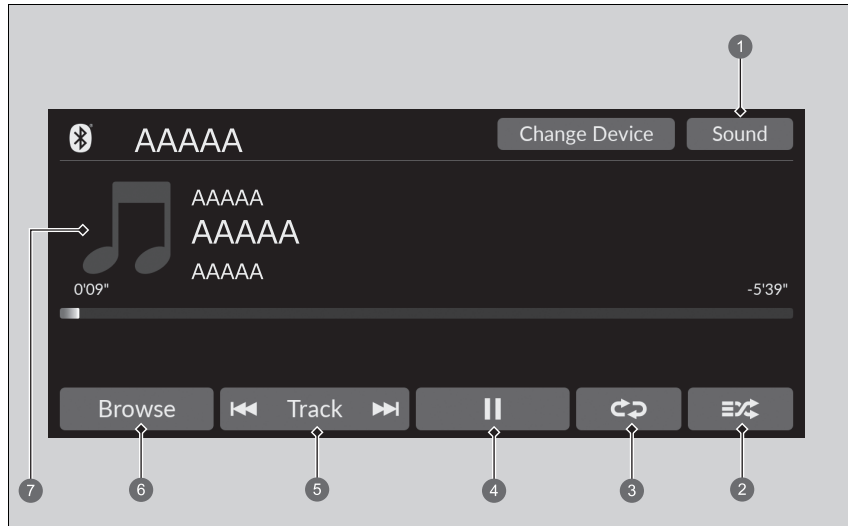
\*1: Default Setting

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 347



- ➊ **Sound** Icon
- ➋ Shuffle Icon
- ➌ Repeat Icon
- ➍ Play/Pause Icon
- ➎ **Track** Icons
- ➏ **Browse** Icon
- ➐ Cover Art

### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there is more than one paired phone in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the *Bluetooth*® device list.


➤ **Phone Setup** P. 347

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting  from the *Bluetooth*® device list.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 347

Continued

## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.  
    📱 **Phone Setup** P. 347
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

### ■ To play or pause a file

Select the play/pause icon.

## ■ Searching for Music

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
3. Select an item.  
    ▶ The selection begins playing.

## 🔗 To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone manufacturer's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 347

## 🔗 Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.




## How to Select a Play Mode


You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

### ■ Shuffle/Repeat


Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

#### Shuffle

 **Shuffle off:** Shuffle mode to off.

 **Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

#### Repeat

 **Repeat off:** Repeat mode to off.

 **Repeat Song:** Repeats the current song.

 **Repeat Group:** Repeats the current group.



 **Repeat all:** Repeats the all songs.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the functions may not be displayed.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

## How to Change a File

You can select  or  to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

## Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device. In addition, the vehicle can be used by other communication devices as a Wi-Fi hotspot via the telematics unit (TCU).

- Connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot
- Use Wi-Fi inside the vehicle

### Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.




### Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

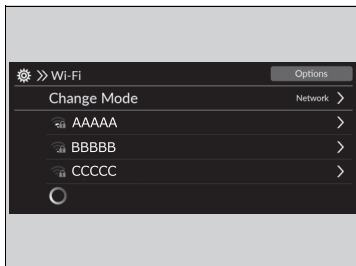
Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.


You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

 **Status Area** P. 271

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

### Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



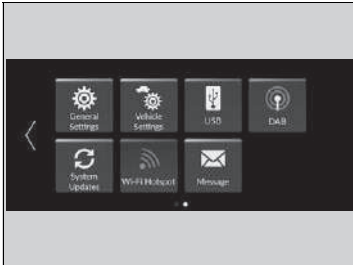
1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
  - To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
  - If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
    -  **System Updates** P. 278
8. Select **Connect**.


#### Turning off the Wi-Fi connection

1. Select **Change Mode**.
2. Select **OFF**.

## ■ Setting the Audio System as a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You can set the network as a Wi-Fi Hotspot of this audio system.  
Use the following steps to setup.



1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
  - ▶ If **Wi-Fi Hotspot** is not displayed on the home screen, select  **All Apps**.
3. Turn on the hotspot.
4. Select **Settings**.
  - ▶ **Network SSID** and **Password** are displayed, and you can change the settings.

The following settings are available for the setup.

- **Network SSID:** Set this network name.
- **Password:** Set password for require entering password when connecting Wi-Fi device to this network.
  - ▶ Passwords can be created with alphanumeric characters and some special characters.

### ⌘ Setting the Audio System as a Wi-Fi Hotspot

Special characters that can be used in passwords.

!	)	;	]
"	*	<	^
#	+	=	_
\$	,	>	`
%	-	?	{
&	.	@	
'	/	[	}
(	:	~	

## Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

➤ **USB Ports** P. 256



① Apple CarPlay

### Apple CarPlay

The images shown here (designs, specifications, etc.) may differ from what is displayed on your screen.

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

We recommend using the latest OS.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system, turn Apple CarPlay off.

➤ **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 304

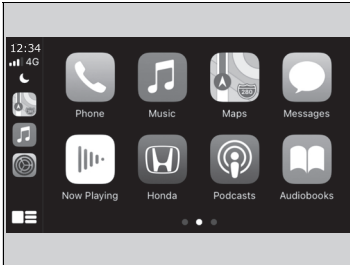
When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.



➤ **Phone Setup** P. 347

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

## Apple CarPlay Menu



- **Phone**  
Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voicemail.
- **Music**  
Play music stored on your iPhone.
- **Maps**  
Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.
- **Messages**  
Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.
- **Honda**  
Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.
-   
Go back to the Apple CarPlay Dashboard screen.
-   
Go back to the Apple CarPlay menu screen.

## Apple CarPlay

### Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

## ■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

## ■ Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.

📖 **USB Ports** P. 256

► The confirmation screen will be displayed.

2. Select **Yes**.

► If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

## ■ Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly from the upper screen**

1. Select **CONNECT**.

2. Select **+ Connect New Device**.

3. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

📖 **Phone Setup** P. 347

4. Select **Yes**.

► If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

## 🔗 Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:

Select **General Settings** →

**Smartphone Connection** → **Apple CarPlay** →

Select device

### Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

## 🔗 Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

Wireless Apple CarPlay and Hotspot cannot be used at the same time. When using Apple CarPlay and Hotspot at the same time, connect to Apple CarPlay with a USB cable.


**■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the Apple CarPlay device list**

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Smartphone Connection**.
4. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.  
▶ **Phone Setup** P. 347
7. Select **Yes**.  
▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

**■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the *Bluetooth*® device list**

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.  
▶ **Phone Setup** P. 347
7. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.  
▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
8. Select **Connect**.
9. Select **Yes**.  
▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

### ■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly with the steering wheel

1. Press and hold the  (talk) button on the steering wheel.
2. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
  - 📖 **Phone Setup** P. 347
3. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
  - ▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
4. Select **Connect**.
5. Select **Yes**.
  - ▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

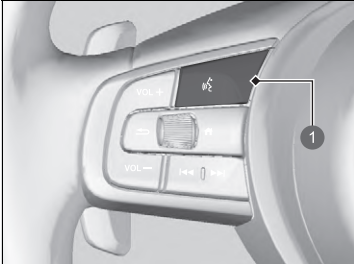
### ■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly at start-up (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.
2. Select **Start**.
  - ▶ If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
  - ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.
3. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
  - 📖 **Phone Setup** P. 347
4. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
  - ▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
5. Select **Connect**.
6. Select **Yes**.
  - ▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.



## ■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the  (talk) button to activate Siri.



①  (Talk) Button

Press and hold to activate Siri.

Press again to deactivate Siri.

Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

## ☒ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit [www.apple.com/ios/siri](http://www.apple.com/ios/siri).

## Android Auto™

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

- **USB Ports** P. 256
- **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 310



### 1 Android Auto

#### Android Auto™

The images shown here (designs, specifications, etc.) may differ from what is displayed on your screen.

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto. *Bluetooth* A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB port.

- **USB Ports** P. 256

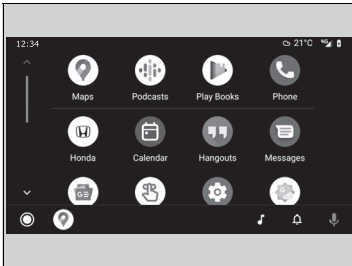
When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.




- **Phone Setup** P. 347

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

Android Auto is a trademark of Google LLC.

## Android Auto Menu



- **Maps**  
Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.
- **Phone**  
Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.
- **Honda**
-  Operate Android Auto with your voice.
-  You can check Android notifications.
-  (Android Auto Home)  
Display useful information organised by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

## Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

### Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

## ■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

### ■ Enabling Android Auto

To enable Android Auto after connecting an Android phone to the system, select **Yes** on the screen.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

### ☒ Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.


You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

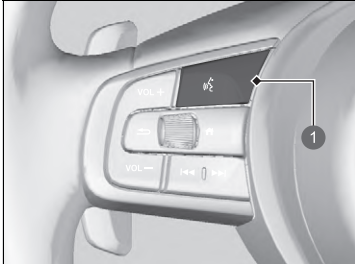
Select **General Settings** →  
**Smartphone Connection** → **Android Auto** →  
Select device

#### **Use of user and vehicle information**

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

## ■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the  (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



①  (Talk) Button


Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice.  
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

### ☒ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

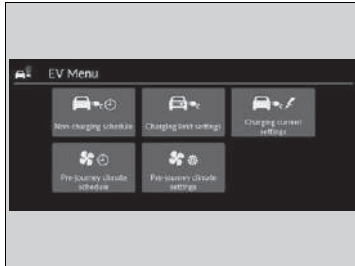
- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by selecting the  icon in the lower-left corner of the screen.

## EV Menu

The several settings for the EV mode on the **EV Menu** screen. Select **EV Menu** on the home screen.



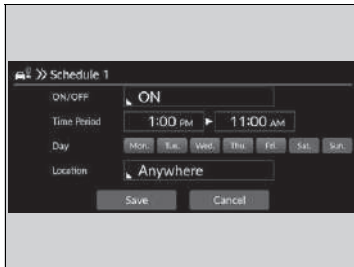
The following items can be set.

- Non-charging schedule
- Charging limit settings
- Charging current settings
- Pre-journey climate schedule
- Pre-journey climate settings

## ■ Non-charging Schedule Setting

Non-charging schedule can be set.  
Select a desired settings.

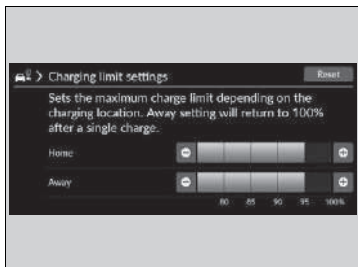
➤ **Using a Timer** P. 554



## ■ Charging Limit Settings

Charging limit can be set.  
Select a desired settings.

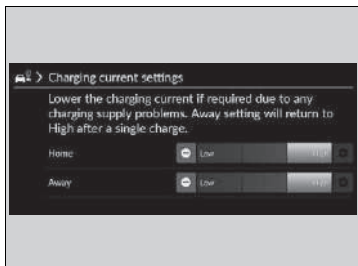
➤ **Maximum Charge Setting** P. 556



## ■ Charging Current Settings

Charging current can be set.  
Select a desired settings.

➤ **Charging Current Settings** P. 557

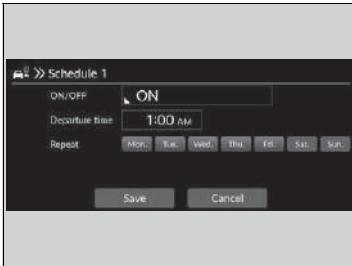




## ■ Pre-Journey Climate Schedule Setting

Pre-Journey Climate Schedule causes the climate control system to operate in advance of the selected departure time in order to make the temperature inside the vehicle closer to your set temperature.

You can set up to 7 different schedules.



1. Select **ON/OFF**, and then select settings for all items in order starting from the top.
2. Select **Save**.

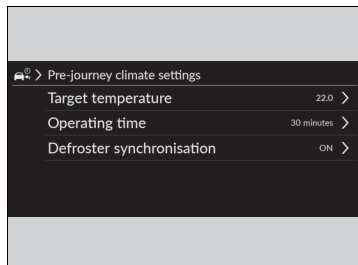
## ▣ Pre-Journey Climate Schedule Setting

Pre-Journey Climate can only operate for up to 30 minutes. A new schedule cannot be set if there is another valid schedule within those 30 minutes.

The system does not operate when the charging connector is not connected.

## ■ Pre-Journey Climate Settings

Pre-journey climate settings can be set.  
Select a desired settings.



The following items can be set.

- **Target temperature:** Selects temperature adjustments. (Lo ~ 15.5 ~ 22.0\*<sup>1</sup> ~ 28.5 ~ Hi)
- **Operating time:** Selects operating time. (10 minutes/20 minutes/30 minutes\*<sup>1</sup>)
- **Defroster synchronisation:** The On/Off settings for operating the defroster automatically. (ON\*<sup>1</sup>/OFF)

\*1: Default Setting

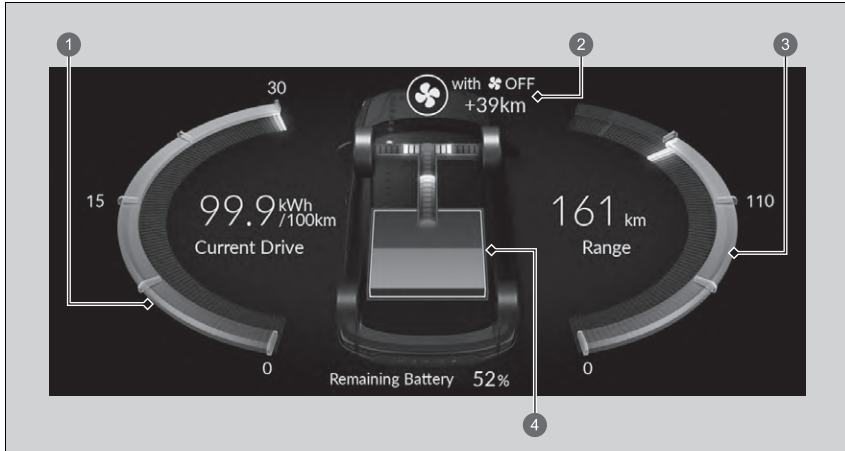
## ▶▶ Pre-Journey Climate Settings

This setting is possible when the climate control system has been activated by the keyless remote.

- ▶ **Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning** P. 246

## Power Flow

The energy flow screen shows the vehicle's power flow, average energy consumption, range, and climate control system ON/OFF indicator.






- ① Average Energy Consumption
- ② Climate Control System ON/OFF Indicator
- **Additional Driving Range** P. 320
- ③ Driving Range by High Voltage Battery
- ④ High Voltage Battery Level Gauge



Shows the High Voltage battery power flow, indicating what is supplying power to the vehicle and/or charging the battery.

- ▶ The indicator for the power transmission appears in blue, and for the battery charging operation, in green.

When the shift position is set to D

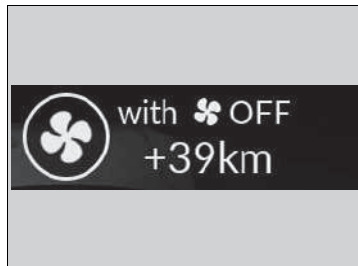
Display	Colour of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Blue	While Driving: Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery.
	Green	While Decelerating: High Voltage battery is being charged by regenerative braking.
	—	When Stopped: The vehicle is idle (standby state).


When the shift position is set to P


Display	Colour of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Blue	Power to the climate control system is being supplied by the High Voltage battery.
	Green	High Voltage battery is being charged by an AC or CCS2 DC charger.

## ■ Additional Driving Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power. This estimate is based on the energy consumption of your previous trips and the remaining charge of the high voltage battery.



You can increase the driving range by turning off the climate control system. The distance displayed under **with  OFF** is the additional estimated distance that the vehicle can drive if the climate control system is turned off.

To turn the climate control system off, select the  icon.

➔ **Climate Control System** P. 240

## ▶▶ Additional Driving Range

The additional driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ to the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

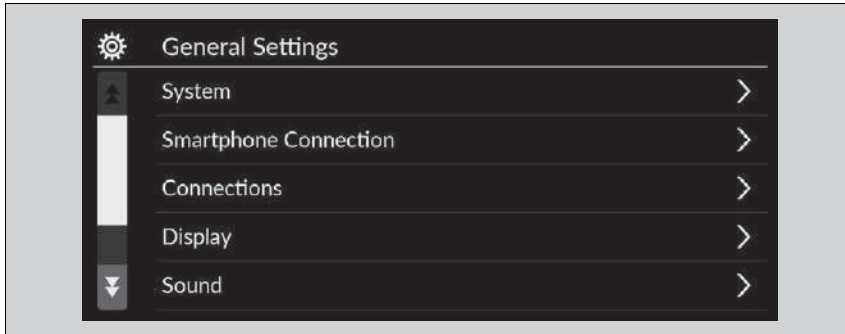
Driving range is dependent on driving conditions and climate control system use. Since the climate control system in this vehicle runs on electricity, it will consume electricity when in use. The climate control system requires more electricity for heating than it does for cooling; therefore, when you use the heating function, especially when ambient temperatures are very low, the distance that you can travel on the remaining power will be shortened. The audio/information screen shows the driving range as well as the amount of electricity that has been consumed by the motor and the climate control system.

## Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

### ■ How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Home**, and select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **System** ▶ P. 322
- **Smartphone Connection** ▶ P. 324
- **Connections** ▶ P. 325
- **Display** ▶ P. 327
- **Sound** ▶ P. 328
- **Camera** ▶ P. 329
- **Voice Control** ▶ P. 330

### ▶ Customized Features

When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to **P**.

■ System


Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
Date & Time	<b>Automatic Date &amp; Time</b>	Selects <b>ON</b> to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select <b>OFF</b> to cancel this function.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>	
	<b>Set Date &amp; Time</b>	<b>Set Date</b>	Adjusts date. ▶ <b>Adjusting the Clock</b> P. 273	<b>Day/Month/Year</b>
		<b>Set Time</b>	Adjusts time. ▶ <b>Adjusting the Clock</b> P. 273	<b>Hour/Minute AM/PM</b>
	<b>Time Zone</b>	<b>Automatic Time Zone</b>	Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	<b>Auto Daylight Saving Time</b>	Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>	
	<b>Date Format</b>	Select a date format.	<b>MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY<sup>*1</sup>/ YYYY/MM/DD</b>	
	<b>Time Format</b>	Select a time format.	<b>12-H<sup>*1</sup>/24-H</b>	

\*1:Default Setting






Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Language</b>	Changes the driver information interface and audio/information screen language separately.	<b>English</b> <sup>*1</sup> See other selectable languages on the screen.
<b>Touch Panel Sensitivity</b>	Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	<b>High/Normal</b> <sup>*1</sup>
<b>System Volumes</b>	<b>System Sounds</b>	—
	<b>Text-to-Speech</b>	—
	<b>Navigation Guidance</b>	—
	<b>Ringtone</b>	—
	<b>Default</b>	Resets all <b>System Volumes</b> settings to default values.
<b>Location and vehicle data sharing</b>	<b>Location and vehicle data sharing</b> Turns the data sharing setting on and off. ▶ <b>Start Up</b> P. 254	<b>ON/OFF</b> <sup>*1</sup>

\*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
<b>About</b>	<b>Status</b>	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	<b>Legal Information</b>		
	<b>Model Number</b>		
	<b>Android Version</b>		
	<b>Kernel Version</b>		
	<b>Build Number</b>		
<b>Factory Data Reset</b>		Resets all the settings to their factory default.  <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 340	<b>Continue/Cancel</b>
<b>Detail Information</b>	<b>App Manager</b>	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—

■ **Smartphone Connection**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Apple CarPlay</b>	<b>+ Connect New Device</b>	Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay.  <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 347	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.  <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 347	—
<b>Android Auto</b>	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.  <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 347	—

■ Connections

	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Wi-Fi	<b>Change Mode</b>	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	<b>Network/ Smartphone<sup>*2</sup>/OFF<sup>*1</sup></b>	
	(Available Networks/Connected Devices)	Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—	
	<b>Options</b>	<b>Add Network</b>	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	—
		<b>Saved Networks</b>	Saves the connected network.	—
	<b>Setup</b>	<b>Network SSID</b>	Sets the network name.	—
		<b>Security</b>	Displays the network security.	—
		<b>Password</b>	Sets password for require entering password when connecting Wi-Fi device to the network.	—
		<b>Wi-Fi Band</b>	Displays the Wi-Fi band.	—

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Appears only when Apple CarPlay is connected wirelessly.

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Bluetooth</b>	<b>Options</b>		
	<b>Bluetooth</b>	Turns the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® on and off.	<b>ON</b> *1/ <b>OFF</b>
	<b>Priority Device</b>	Displays the priority device.	—
	<b>+ Connect New Device</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT. ➤ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 347	—
(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➤ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 347	—	

\*1:Default Setting

**■ Display**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Brightness</b>	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
<b>Contrast</b>	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
<b>Black Level</b>	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
<b>Default</b>	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

■ Sound

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<p><b>Bass / Treble</b></p> <hr/> <p><b>Treble</b></p> <hr/> <p><b>Midrange</b></p> <hr/> <p><b>Bass</b></p>	<p>Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.  ▶ <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 276</p>	<p>—</p>
<p><b>Balance / Fader</b></p>		
<p><b>Speed Volume Compensation</b></p>		

■ Camera

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
<b>Rear Camera*</b>	<b>Fixed Guideline</b>	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ▶ <b>Multi-View Rear Camera*</b> P. 502	<b>ON*1/OFF</b>	
	<b>Dynamic Guideline</b>	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ▶ <b>Multi-View Rear Camera*</b> P. 502	<b>ON*1/OFF</b>	
<b>Multi View Camera*</b>	<b>Guidelines</b>	<b>Fixed Guideline</b>	<b>ON*1/OFF</b>	
		<b>Dynamic Guideline</b>	<b>ON*1/OFF</b>	
	<b>Customise</b>	<b>Show after shifting from Reverse</b>	Selects whether to display the forward camera image after shifting from <b>[R]</b> to <b>[D]</b> .	<b>ON/OFF*1</b>
		<b>Auto display when obstacle is detected</b>	Displays the forward camera image when a parking sensor detects an obstacle.	<b>ON*1/OFF</b>
<b>Cross Traffic Monitor</b>		Shows arrows on the rear camera image to indicate vehicles approaching from the sides. ▶ <b>Cross Traffic Monitor*</b> P. 498	<b>ON*1/OFF</b>	

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Voice Control

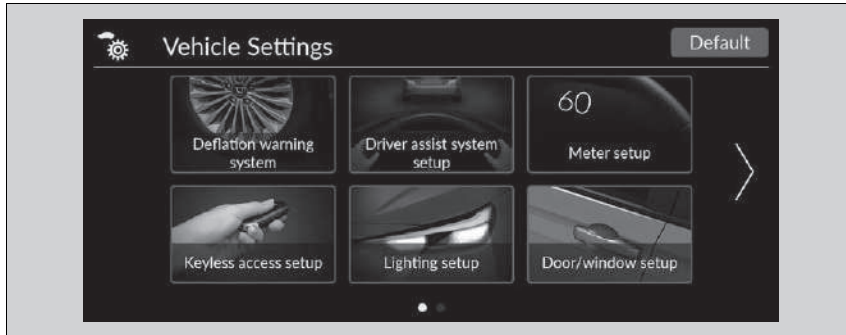
Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Voice Control Mode</b>	Selects a mode of the voice portal screen. ▶ <b>Voice Control Operation</b> P. 261	<b>Assist/Normal</b> *1

\*1:Default Setting



## ■ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Home**, and then select **Vehicle Settings** and select a setting item.



## ■ Deflation warning system

---

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Deflation warning system</b>	Cancels/Calibrates the deflation warning system. ▶ <b>Deflation Warning System</b> P. 398	<b>Calibrate/Cancel</b>

■ Driver assist system setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance</b>	Selects distance for Forward Collision Warning audible and visual alerts. ➤ <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> P. 411	<b>Far/Normal*<sup>1</sup>/Near</b>
<b>ACC vehicle ahead detected beep</b>	Turns on/off audible notification when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow</b> P. 424	<b>ON/OFF*<sup>1</sup></b>
<b>Road departure mitigation setting</b>	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ➤ <b>Road Departure Mitigation System</b> P. 463	<b>Early/Normal/Delayed*<sup>1</sup></b>
<b>Lane keep assist beep</b>	Switches the LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist alert beeps on and off. ➤ <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 441 ➤ <b>Traffic Jam Assist</b> P. 453	<b>ON/OFF*<sup>1</sup></b>
<b>Blind spot information</b>	Selects on/off the blind spot information system audible alert. ➤ <b>Blind Spot Information System*</b> P. 402	<b>Audible and visual alert*<sup>1</sup>/Visual alert only</b>
<b>Traffic sign recognition system display</b>	Displays the traffic sign recognition system on instrument panel. ➤ <b>Traffic Sign Recognition System</b> P. 471	<b>Display*<sup>1</sup>/None</b>
<b>Speed limit sign change beep</b>	Turns on/off the audible notification when speed limit sign information is changed. ➤ <b>Traffic Sign Recognition System</b> P. 471	<b>ON/OFF*<sup>1</sup></b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models


Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Apply Parking Brake after Honda Parking Pilot*</b>	Automatically applies the parking brake at the completion of a Honda Parking Pilot manoeuvre. ➤ <b>Honda Parking Pilot*</b> P. 518	<b>ON**/OFF</b>
<b>Honda Parking Pilot Space Detect Beep*</b>	Turns on/off the audible notification when Honda Parking Pilot detects an available parking space. ➤ <b>Honda Parking Pilot*</b> P. 518	<b>ON**/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

■ Meter setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Warning message</b>	Selects whether to display the warning message. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages</b> P. 124	<b>ON/OFF<sup>*1</sup></b>
<b>Adjust outside temp. display</b>	Selects to adjust outside temperature reading by a few degrees. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Outside Temperature</b> P. 138	<b>-3°C ~ ±0°C<sup>*1</sup> ~ +3°C</b>
<b>Trip A reset timing</b>	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Energy Consumption / Trip Meter</b> P. 141 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Speed/Time/Trip Meter</b> P. 143	<b>When charged/Manual reset<sup>*1</sup>/ POWER OFF</b>
<b>Trip B reset timing</b>	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Energy Consumption / Trip Meter</b> P. 141 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Speed/Time/Trip Meter</b> P. 143	<b>When charged/Manual reset<sup>*1</sup>/ POWER OFF</b>
<b>Alarm volume control</b>	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning and indicator.	<b>Max/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/Min</b>
<b>Reverse position alert tone</b>	Turns on/off the reverse alert sound.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
<b>Turn by turn display</b>	Turns on/off the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Turn-by-turn directions</b> P. 145	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Speed/distance units</b>	Selects the trip computer units.  <b>Speed/Distance Units</b> P. 153	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Left-hand drive type</div> <b>km/h · km<sup>1</sup>/mph · miles</b> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Right-hand drive type</div> <b>km/h · km/mph · miles<sup>*1</sup></b>
<b>Rear seat reminder</b>	Turns on/off the Rear Seat Reminder feature.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

### ■ Keyless access setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Keyless access light flash</b>	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

■ Lighting setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Auto High Beam</b>	Turns on/off auto high beam function.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
<b>Interior light dimmer duration</b>	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Interior Lights</b> P. 221	<b>60sec/30sec<sup>*1</sup>/15sec</b>
<b>Headlight auto OFF timer</b>	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Automatic Lighting Off Feature</b> P. 194	<b>60sec/30sec/15sec<sup>*1</sup>/0sec</b>
<b>Instrument illumination sensitivity</b>	Selects sensitivity of automatic instrument panel dimming when headlight is in <b>AUTO</b> setting.	<b>Min/Low/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/High/Max</b>
<b>Headlight integration with wipers</b>	Selects on/off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in <b>AUTO</b> setting. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Headlight Integration with Wipers</b> P. 194	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

■ **Door/window setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Lock presetting*</b>	Turns on/off the lock presetting function.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
<b>Keyless lock notification</b>	Turns on/off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by keyless remote. ► <b>Using the Remote Transmitter</b> P. 176	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
<b>Auto folding door mirror</b>	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
<b>Remote Window Control</b>	Turns on/off the remote window control.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting


■ **Power tailgate setup\***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Keyless open mode</b>	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	<b>Anytime<sup>*1</sup>/When unlocked</b>
<b>Power open by outer handle</b>	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	<b>ON (Power/Manual)<sup>*1</sup>/OFF (Manual only)</b>
<b>Hands free access</b>	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting



■ **Maintenance info.\***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Maintenance info.</b>	Resets the maintenance information.  <b>Service Reminder System</b> * P. 566	<b>Selects Reset Items</b>

\* Not available on all models

## Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

### ■ Defaulting General Settings

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
  - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
  - The system will reboot.

### ■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default**.
4. Select **Yes**.

### » Defaulting All the Settings

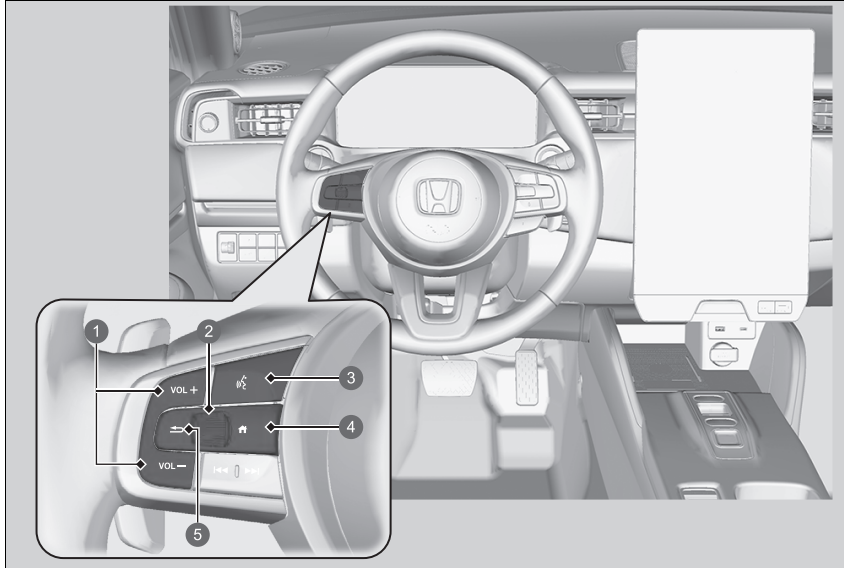
When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.




If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

## Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

### HFT Buttons



- ① VOL +/VOL - (Volume) Buttons
- ② Left Selector Wheel
- ③  (Talk) Button
- ④  (Home) Button
- ⑤  (Back) Button

### Hands-Free Telephone System


Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 321


Voice control tips


- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a phonebook name or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, the volume level is able to change by the audio system's volume.


If there is no Favourite Contact entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

▶ **Favourite Contacts** P. 351


Continued


 **(Talk) button:** Press to access Voice Portal.

 **(Home) button:** Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

**Left Selector Wheel:** Press the  (home) button. Roll up or down to select **Phone** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

 **Receiving a Call** P. 355

 **(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command of the driver information screen.

To go to the phone screen:

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the phone screen.

## Hands-Free Telephone System

### *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology

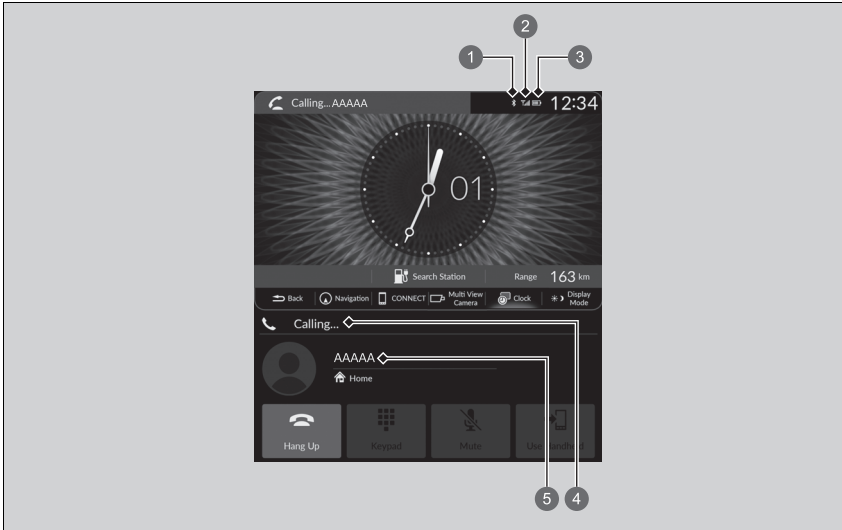
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



- 1 *Bluetooth*® Indicator  
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
- 2 Signal Strength
- 3 Battery Level Status
- 4 HFT Mode
- 5 Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

## HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➤ **Favourite Contacts** P. 351

## HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Home** and then **Phone**.



- 1 Recent calls
- 2 Favourite contacts
- 3 Settings
- 4 Contacts
- 5 Keypad

**Recent calls:** Display the last outgoing, incoming and missed calls.

**Favourite contacts:** Dial the selected number in the favourite contacts list.

**Settings:** Change the phone settings.

**Contacts:** Display the phonebook of the paired phone.

**Keypad:** Enter a phone number to dial.

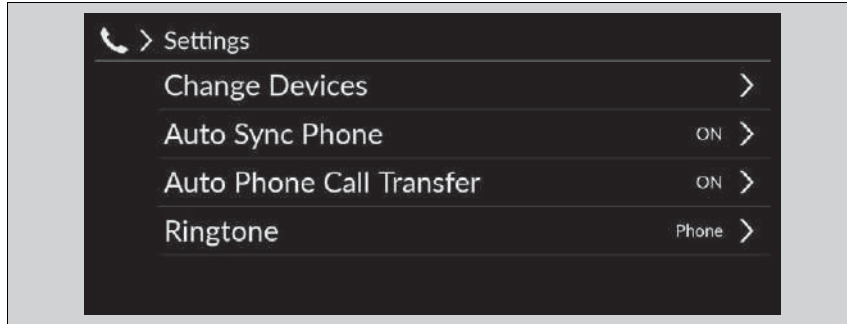
## HFT Menus

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

## ■ Phone settings screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.



**Change Devices:** Pair a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

**Auto Sync Phone:** Set phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

**Auto Phone Call Transfer:** Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

**Ringtone:** Select the ringtone.

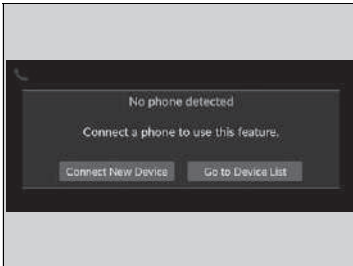


## Phone Setup

### Bluetooth® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.



### To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Connect New Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
  - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.

### Phone Setup


Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.


#### Phone Pairing Tips:


- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more icons on the right side.

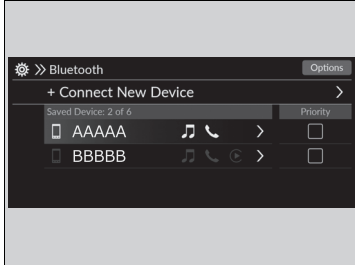
These icons indicate the following:

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.









: The phone can be used with HFT.

: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable.



### ■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - **Phone settings screen** P. 346
2. Select **Change Devices**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
  - HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
  - You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
4. Select , , or .
  -  and  can be selected simultaneously. However, when  is selected,  and  cannot be selected.
5. Select **Apply**.



### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - **Phone settings screen** P. 346
2. Select **Change Devices**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

### ►► To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

## ■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 346
2. Select **Ringtone**.
3. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.

## ■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 346
2. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

## ▶▶ Ringtone

**Vehicle:** The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.

**Phone:** Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

## ■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:










When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 346
2. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

## ▶▶ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

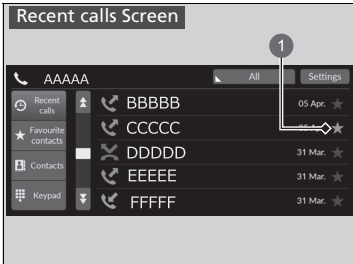
When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

	Pref		Fax
	Home		Car
	Mobile		Voice
	Work		Other
	Pager		

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection.  
Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## Favourite Contacts

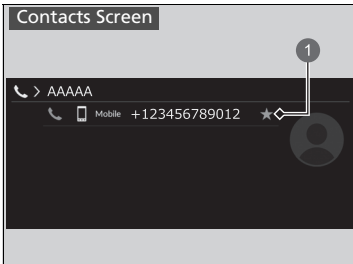


- **To add a favourite contacts**
- 1. Select **Phone**.
- 2. Select **Recent calls, Contacts, or Keypad**.

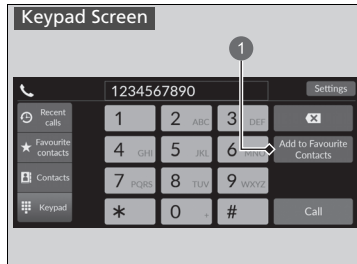
**On the Recent calls or Contacts screen**

- 3. Select the star icon.

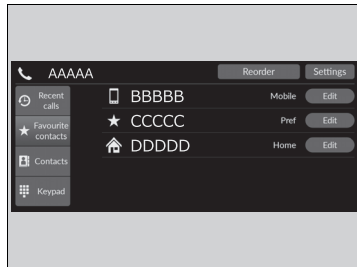
1 Star Icon



1 Star Icon



### 1 Add to Favourite Contacts



### On the Keypad screen

#### 3. Select **Add to Favourite Contacts**.

- A notification appears on the screen if the favourite contact is successfully stored.
- To remove the favourite contact, select the star icon again.

#### ■ To edit a favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Done**.

#### ■ To delete a favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the favourite contacts entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls**, **Favourite Contacts**, and **Contacts** entries.

### ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
  - ▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ▶▶ Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

### ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ■ To make a call using the Call History

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls**.
  - ▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ■ To make a call using a favourite contacts entry

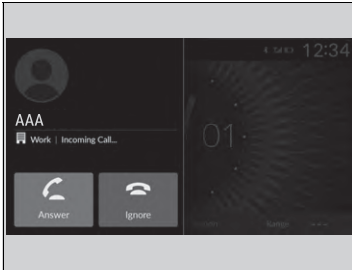
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
  - ▶ You can change the order of favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.
3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ▶▶ To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 100 all, dialled, missed, or received calls.  
(Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)





## Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.


You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.


To pick the call, roll up or down to select  (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.


- ▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select  (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.


## Receiving a Call



### Call Waiting

Select  (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Select  using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

Select  (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Select  if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  on the driver information interface.

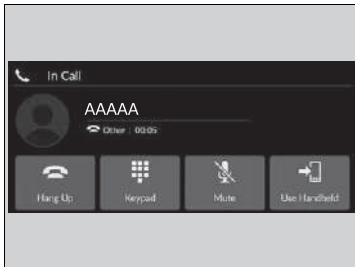
## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Use Handheld:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

**Keypad:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

- The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## ▣ Options During a Call

**Keypad:** Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

## iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
<b>Connect Retry</b>	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
<b>Unplayable File</b>	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about a few seconds, then plays the next file.
<b>No Data</b>	<b>iPod</b> Appears when the iPod is empty. <b>USB flash drive</b> Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV files in the USB flash drive. <b>iPod and USB flash drive</b> Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
<b>Unsupported</b>	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
<b>No response from device</b>	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
<b>USB hub not supported</b>	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.
<b>A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.</b>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

## Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

### iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
Made for iPod touch (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015
Made for iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6S/iPhone 6S Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 12 mini

### iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

The Lightning connector works with iPhone 5, iPhone 5s, iPhone 5c, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6S, iPhone 6S Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 12, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 12 mini, iPod touch (5th, 6th generation).

The 30-pin connector works with iPhone 4s.

USB works with iPhone 4s, iPhone 5, iPhone 5s, iPhone 5c, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6S, iPhone 6S Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 12, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 12 mini, iPod touch (5th, 6th generation).

### USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

### USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, AVI, MP4, MKV, ASF/WMV formats may be unsupported.

## About Open Source Licences

---

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

1. Select **Home**.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **About**.
5. Select **Legal Information**.
6. Select **Licence**.

## Licence Information

---

### ■ Bluetooth

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

*<https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/>*



### ■ Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

## ■ Apple

“Made for iPod,” and “Made for iPhone,” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.



## ■ MPEG

### Mpeg4 Visual

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD (“MPEG-4 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

### VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).



#### AVC/H.264

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

## Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

---

### ■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

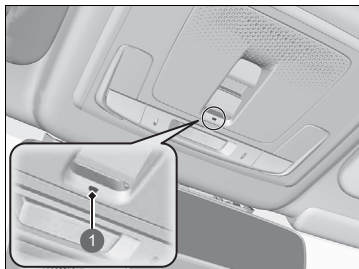
USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

## DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

## Automatic emergency call



### 1 eCall Indicator

- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle (passenger vehicle or light-weight commercial vehicle)
- Type of energy stored for vehicle propulsion (petrol/diesel/CNG/LPG/electricity/hydrogen)
- Last three locations of the vehicle
- Direction of travel
- Triggering mode (automatic or manual)
- Timestamp

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

When the power mode is set to ON, the eCall indicator lights up in green for 1 second, then in red for 1 second.

### Emergency Call (eCall)

Your vehicle is equipped with the 112-based eCall service system.

The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated when the power mode is set to ON. In the event of a collision, the system will determine the degree of the impact based on information collected from the on-board sensors and, depending on the severity of the collision, will initiate the emergency call.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed.

**Manual emergency call** P. 368

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC) and 2002/58/EC, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

If the eCall system is working properly, the indicator will light up in green.

- Green: eCall system is ready.
- Blinking in green: eCall system is connected and making an eCall to a PSAP operator.
- Repeating a pattern of short flashes of the red light: The eCall system has failed to connect to an operator. The eCall indicator will continue this pattern for 5 seconds, then it will light up in green.

If the 112-based eCall system is disabled in the event of a critical system failure, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle:

- Red or blacked out: A problem with the eCall system has occurred. If the indicator stays red or blacked out even after you have restarted the vehicle, have the system check by a dealer.
- Blinking in red: The level of the backup battery is too low. While the power is in ON, the battery undergoes recharging. Once the battery has been recharged to a certain level, the eCall indicator lights up in green.

#### ☒ Emergency Call (eCall)

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country in which they are located and are the first to receive and for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

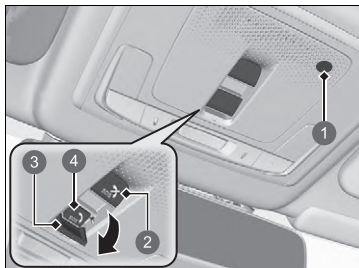
Your vehicle may NOT be able to connect to a PSAP operator if:

- both the 12V battery and backup battery are too low.
- your vehicle is in an area without adequate cellular coverage.
- There is a problem with the eCall system itself or its peripheral equipment such as the microphone or speakers.

The backup battery is designed to operate for at least 3 years, after which it may need to be replaced.

The backup battery is not available for direct purchase. For replacement, visit a dealer.

## Manual emergency call



- ① Microphone
- ② **SOS** Cancel Button
- ③ Cover
- ④ **SOS** Button

The **SOS** button is protected by a cover. Open the cover to gain access.

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

### Manual emergency call

Do NOT press the button while you are driving. If you need to contact an operator, park the vehicle in a safe place before you make a call.

If the eCall system at first fails to connect to a PSAP operator, it will try again until a connection is established. However, if 2 minutes have elapsed since the first try was attempted, the system will no longer attempt to establish a connection.

The **SOS** cancel button does not cancel a call once the system is connected to an operator.

## ☒ Emergency Call (eCall)

**Data privacy**

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed to ensure that:

- Data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
- It is not traceable or subject to any constant tracking during its normal operation status.
- Data in the internal memory of the system is automatically and continuously removed.

For the system to function normally, the vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so that the last three locations of the vehicle are kept up-to-date.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.

## Emergency Call (eCall)

### Owner's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

#### Honda eCall Service Information:

If you have any questions about eCall, contact the office relevant to the country in which you reside. See the service book or your local Honda website for a list of offices.



# Driving

This chapter discusses driving and charging.



<b>Before Driving</b> .....	372	Deflation Warning System.....	398	<b>Braking</b> .....	480
<b>Towing a Trailer</b> .....	376	Blind Spot Information System* .....	402	<b>Parking Your Vehicle</b> .....	490
<b>When Driving</b>		<b>Honda Sensing</b> .....	407	<b>Multi-View Rear Camera*</b> .....	502
Turning on the Power .....	377	Collision Mitigation Braking System		<b>Multi-View Camera*</b> .....	504
Precautions While Driving.....	380	(CMBS) .....	411	<b>Honda Parking Pilot*</b> .....	518
Transmission .....	381	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low		Sonar Sensors.....	543
Shifting .....	382	Speed Follow .....	424	<b>Charging</b> .....	544
Deceleration Paddle Selector .....	388	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)....	441	<b>Energy Economy</b> .....	560
Drive Mode Switch.....	391	Traffic Jam Assist .....	453		
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System.....	394	Road Departure Mitigation System....	463		
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System.....	395	Traffic Sign Recognition System .....	471		
Agile Handling Assist .....	397	Front Wide View Camera.....	478		

\* Not available on all models

## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    - ▶ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 598
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.
- Disconnect the charger cable.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
    - **Load Limit** P. 375
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  - ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - **Seats** P. 210
    - **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 217
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  - ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - **Mirrors** P. 207
    - **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 206

### Interior Checks

Heat from the power system can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

➤ **Headlight Adjuster** P. 197

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - ▶ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 51
- Make sure that the indicators in the gauge come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    - ▶ **Indicators** P. 104

## Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

📄 **Specifications** P. 670

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

📄 **Specifications** P. 670

### 📄 Load Limit

## ⚠️ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

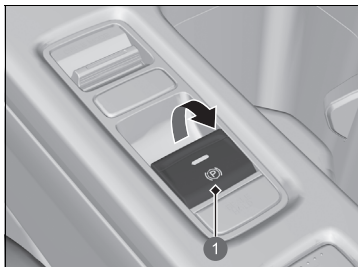
Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

## Towing a Trailer

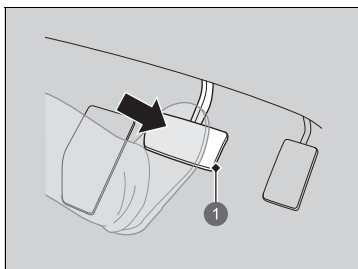
---

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

## Turning on the Power



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch



1 Brake Pedal

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
2. Depress the brake pedal.

### Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.

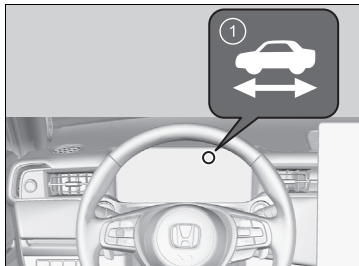
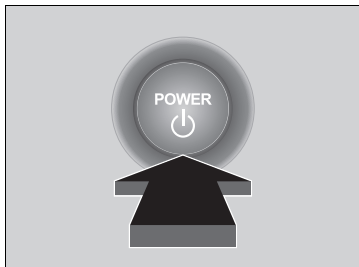
When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce 12-volt battery drain.


If the temperature of the High Voltage battery drops to  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  or below, the power system will not start. Wait for the High Voltage battery to warm up or move the vehicle to a warmer location. Note using the battery heating system will not help in this case.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 641




The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.



1  (Ready) Indicator


3. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.

4. Check the  (Ready) indicator.

- ▶ Keep depressing the brake pedal until the  indicator comes on.
- ▶ The  indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
- ▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the  indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the gauge.

➤ **Indicators** P. 104

#### ▶▶ Turning on the Power

If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the  indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.

➤ **Ready Indicator** P. 109

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.


If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the power system does not activate.

➤ **Immobilizer System** P. 182

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down. This is normal.



## Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the  indicator is on, then put the transmission into **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.
2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
  - ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
    - ❏ **Parking Brake** P. 480
    - ❏ **If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message** P. 653

## Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into **[D]** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

## Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Depress the brake pedal and change the shift position to **[P]**.
  - ▶ Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **[P]** is shown on the shift position indicator.
2. Press the **POWER** button.

## Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

## Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

## Precautions While Driving

### ■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

### ■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

### ▶▶ Precautions While Driving

**CAUTION:** Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the power system and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

#### NOTICE

Do not select a shift button while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

#### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

## ■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the power system or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

## ■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

# Transmission

## ■ Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.

Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

## ⌘ Precautions While Driving

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select **[N]** while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km (200 miles) after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

## ⌘ In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you increase the deceleration rate with the deceleration paddle selector. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift button positions



#### **P** Park

Used when parking or before turning the power on or off

#### **R** Reverse

Used when reversing

#### **N** Neutral

Transmission is not locked

#### **D** Drive

Used for:  
Normal driving

#### When in a mode other than SPORT mode

- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.

#### When SPORT mode is on

- The deceleration paddle selector can be used.

### ▶▶ Shifting

## **⚠ WARNING**

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

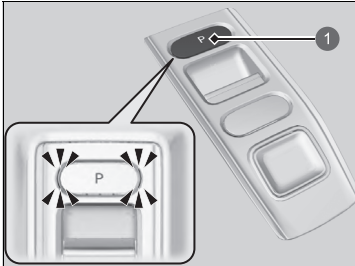
To prevent malfunction and unintended engagement:

- Do not spill any liquids on or around shift buttons.
- Do not place or drop any objects on or around shift buttons.
- Do not let passengers or children operate the shift buttons.

The message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the shift position in **N**.

#### **▶ Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 124

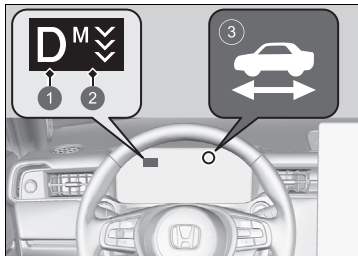
Change the shift position to **D** or **R** with the brake pedal depressed.

**■ P (parking) button**

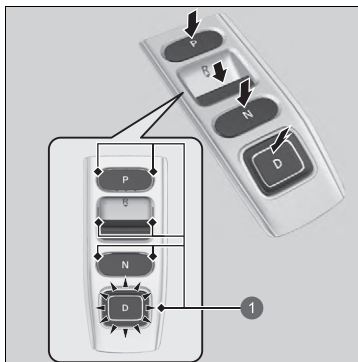
The shift position changes to **P** when you press the **P** button while the vehicle is parked with the power mode in ON. The indicators on the sides of the **P** button come on.

**① P Button**

## ■ Shift Operation



- ① Shift Position Indicator
- ② Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator
- ③ (Ready) Indicator



- ① Shift Button Indicator

**P**: Press the **P** button.

**R**: Press back the **R** button.

**N**: Press the **N** button.

**D**: Press the **D** button.

## ▶▶ Shift Operation

### NOTICE

When you change **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift button before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

Use the shift position indicator and the shift button indicator to check the shift position before and after selecting a shift button.

If the indicator of the currently selected shift position, or all the shift position indicators are blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The beeper sounds once when you change to **R**.

▶ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

### ■ When opening the driver's door

If you open the driver's door under the following conditions, the shift position automatically changes to **P**.

- The vehicle is stationary with the power mode in ON, or moving at 2 km/h (1 mph) or slower.
- The transmission is in other than **P**.
- You have unfastened the driver side seat belt.
  - ▶ If you manually change the shift position from **P** with the brake pedal depressed, the shift position will automatically return to **P** once you release the brake pedal.

### ■ When turning off the power mode

If you turn the power system off while the vehicle is stationary, and the transmission is in other than **P**, the shift position automatically changes to **P**.

#### ⓘ When opening the driver's door

While the system is designed to automatically change the shift position to **P** under the described conditions, in the interest of safety you should always select **P** before opening the driver's door. Make sure to park the vehicle in a safe place.

#### ➤ When Stopped P. 490

If you want to drive the vehicle after the shift position has automatically changed to **P** under the described conditions, close the door, fasten the seat belt, depress the brake pedal, then change the shift position.

If you leave the vehicle, turn off the power system and lock the doors.

■ **If you want to keep the transmission in **N** position (car wash mode)**

With the power system on:

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Select **N**.
3. Within five seconds, press the **POWER** button.  
The power mode changes to ACCESSORY and a message will be displayed on the driver information interface.
  - ▶ This puts the vehicle in car wash mode which must be used when your vehicle is pulled through a conveyor type automatic car wash where you or an attendant do not remain in the vehicle.
  - ▶ The shift position remains in **N** with the power mode in ACCESSORY for 15 minutes, then, it automatically changes to **P**.

Manually changing to **P** cancels ACCESSORY mode. The **P** indicator comes on and the power mode changes to OFF.

ⓘ If you want to keep the transmission in **N** position



Note that the transmission may not stay in **N** position while any of the following indicators is on:

- Power system indicator
- Transmission system indicator
- 12-volt battery charging system indicator



### ■ Restrictions on selecting a shift position

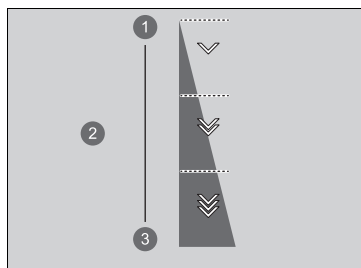
You cannot select a shift position under certain circumstances that may lead to a crash.

When the transmission is in:	1. Under these circumstances:	2. If you try to change to the following:	3. The shift position remains in/changes to:	How to change the shift position
<b>P</b>	The brake pedal is not depressed.	Other shift position	<b>P</b>	Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.
	The accelerator pedal is depressed.			
<b>N</b>	The vehicle is moving at low speed without the brake pedal depressed.			
	The vehicle is moving at low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed.			
<b>N</b> or <b>D</b>	The vehicle is moving forward.	<b>R</b>	<b>N</b>	Park your vehicle in a safe place.
<b>R</b> or <b>N</b>	The vehicle is moving backward.	<b>D</b>		
<b>R</b> , <b>N</b> , or <b>D</b>	The vehicle is moving.	<b>P</b>		
<b>P</b> or <b>N</b>	The  indicator is not on.	A shift position other than <b>P</b> or <b>N</b>	<b>P</b> or <b>N</b>	Make sure that the  indicator comes on.

## Deceleration Paddle Selector




When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through three stages of deceleration.

When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.



- ① Decrease
- ② Deceleration Stage
- ③ Increase

### To select the different stages of deceleration:

- Pull back the  selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
  - Pull back the  selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage.
- Pull the  selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

### ▶▶ Deceleration Paddle Selector

## ⚠ CAUTION

Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

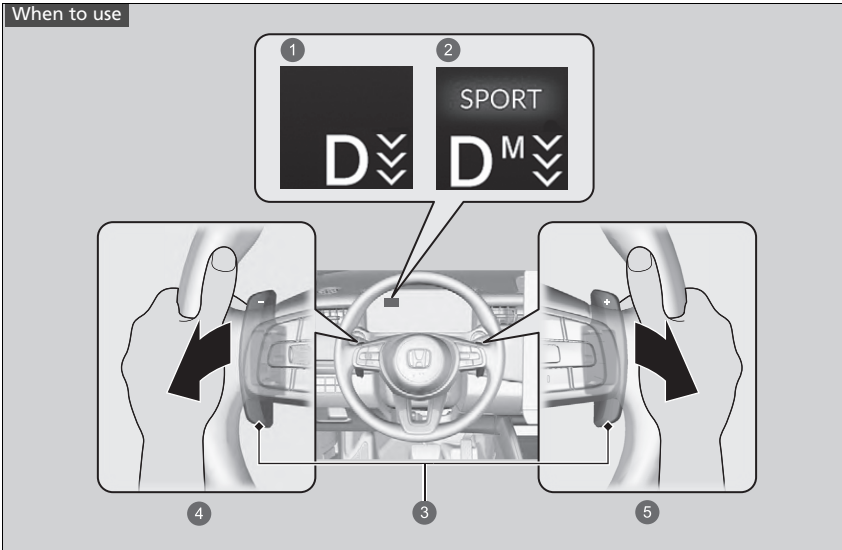
Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

If you pull back right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically:

- The high voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range with **SPORT** mode off.
- Power system protection is needed.
- The paddle selector is operated while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

When to use



Shift position is in **D**


- 1 When in a mode other than **SPORT** mode, the deceleration stage appears.
- 2 When **SPORT** mode is ON, The deceleration stage and **M** appear.
- 3 Paddle Selector
- 4 Increase the deceleration stage when pulling the **-** paddle selector (left side)
- 5 Decrease the deceleration stage when pulling the **+** paddle selector (right side)

Deceleration Paddle Selector

If either paddle selector is operated, ACC with Low Speed Follow will cancel automatically.

■ **When in a mode other than SPORT mode**


If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, pull the  selector (right side) for a few seconds.

The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and deceleration stage in the gauge disappear when you drive with constant speed, situations of acceleration and decelerate just before stopping your vehicle.

■ **When SPORT mode is ON**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the gauge. The deceleration stage will not cancel automatically while **SPORT** mode is ON.

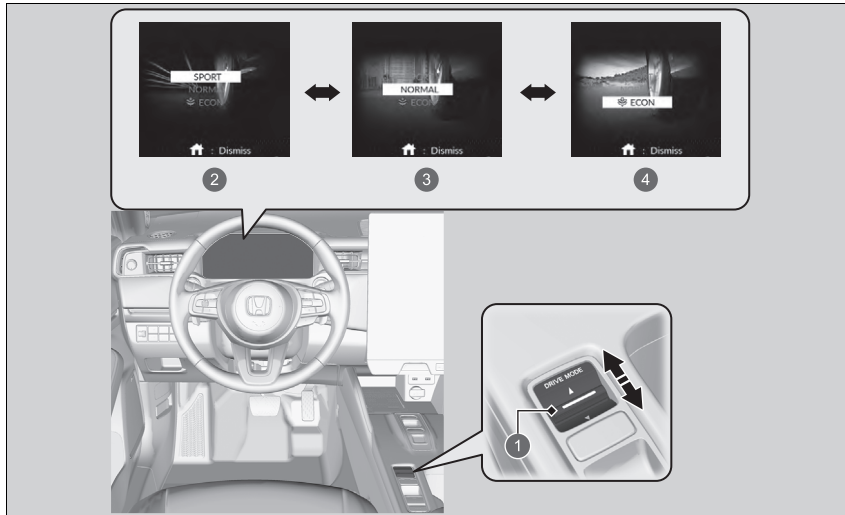
When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, turn the **SPORT** mode OFF, or pull the  selector (right side) for a few seconds. When cancelled, deceleration stage in the gauge disappears.

## Drive Mode Switch

You can choose between three modes, **SPORT** mode, **NORMAL** mode and **ECON** mode by using the **DRIVE MODE** switch.

The current mode is displayed on the driver information interface, and each mode will appear differently.

### Selecting the Drive Mode

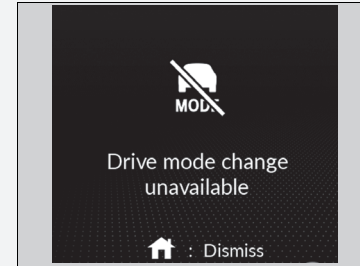


- ① **DRIVE MODE** Switch
- ② **SPORT** Mode

- ③ **NORMAL** Mode
- ④ **ECON** Mode

### Drive Mode Switch

The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions. If there is a vehicle system failure, the following message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot select any other mode.

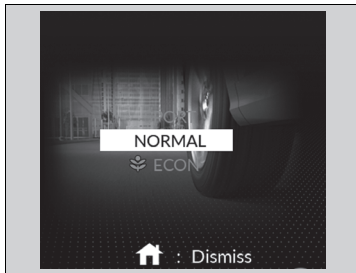


## SPORT Mode



Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input.

## NORMAL Mode



Optimises the balance between operability and comfort.

## ECON Mode



Facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

## Next Start-Up Mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart.

Last Mode	Next Mode
SPORT or NORMAL	NORMAL
ECON	ECON

## ECON Mode

While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system will be less effective and the vehicle slower to accelerate.

While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuation and activates the seat heater.

▶ **Front Seat Heaters** P. 237

## Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

---

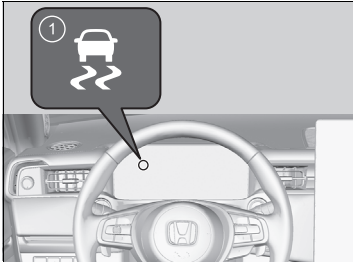
Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 32 km/h (22 mph) or less.



## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

### ■ VSA Operation



① VSA System Indicator

When VSA activates, you may notice that the motor does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

### ⊠ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

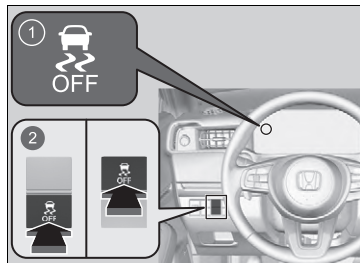
VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.


## ■ VSA On and Off



- ① VSA **OFF** Indicator
- ②  (VSA **OFF**) Button

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ▶▶ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from under the bonnet while system checks are being performed immediately after turn the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

## Agile Handling Assist

---

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

### ⓘ Agile Handling Assist

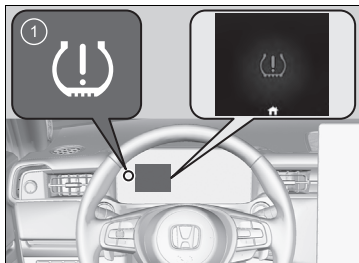
The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from under the bonnet while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

## Deflation Warning System

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



### 1 Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

### ▶▶ Deflation Warning System

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

▶ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 598

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.

**» Deflation Warning System**

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at calibration.
- Tyre chains are used.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  - **Checking Tyres** P. 598

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in **[P]**.
- The power mode is in **ON**.

## ▣ Deflation Warning System Calibration

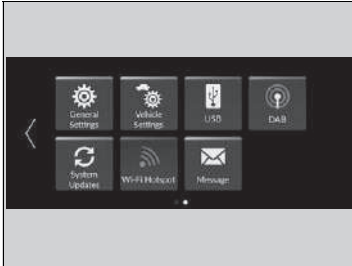
The calibration process requires approximately 20 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 35-105 km/h (22-65 mph).

During this period, if the power system is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

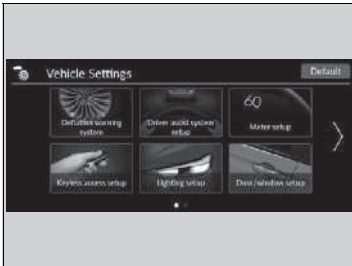
We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



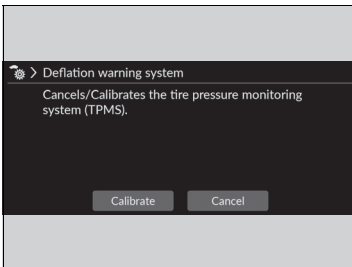
When you calibrate the deflation warning system, do the following.

📖 **Basic Operation** P. 255

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Select **Home**.



3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.



4. Select **Deflation warning system**.
5. Select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.

- If the **Calibration Failed to Start** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

## Blind Spot Information System\*

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

### ▶▶ Blind Spot Information System\*

#### **Important Safety Reminder**

Like all assistance systems, the Blind Spot Information System has limitations. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes. Overreliance on the Blind Spot Information System may result in a collision.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer in the following situations:

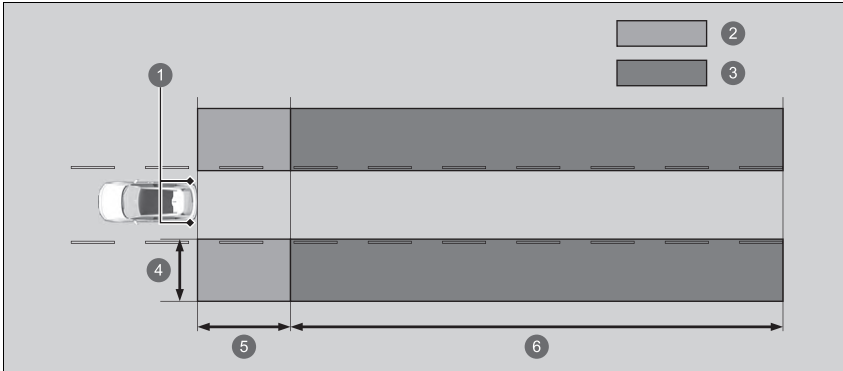
- The rear bumper or area around the radar sensors is strongly impacted.
- The indicator does not come on even if a vehicle in the alert zone should have been detected.
- The rear bumper or any system components need to be repaired.

If the rear bumper or any system components are repaired, the system will revert to alert zone 1 until it is able to adapt and expand to alert zone 1 and 2.



## ■ How the System Works

The system activates when your vehicle is moving forward at about 32 km/h (20 mph) or above.

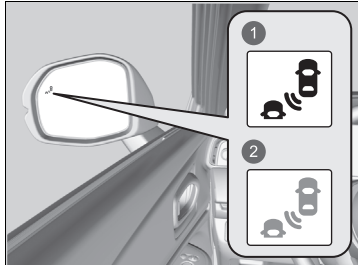


- ❶ Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners
  - ❷ Alert Zone 1
  - ❸ Alert Zone 2
- Alert zone range
- ❹ Approx. 0.5 ~ 3 m (1.6 ~ 10 ft.) from vehicle side.
  - ❺ Approx. 3 m (10 ft.) from rear bumper.
  - ❻ Approx. 3 ~ 25 m (10 ~ 82 ft.) behind from rear bumper. (The faster the approaching vehicle, the further away it will be detected.)

The initially set alert zone is alert zone 1. Over time, after the vehicle has been driven on straight roads with traffic and roadside objects, the system will adapt and expand the alert zone (alert zone 1 and 2).

*Continued*

## ■ When the system detects a vehicle



- 1 Comes On
- 2 Blinks

Blind Spot Information System Alert Indicator:  
Located on the outside rearview mirror on  
both sides.

### Comes on when:

- A vehicle approaches you from behind to overtake you at a speed difference of no more than about 50 km/h (31 mph).
- You pass a vehicle at a speed difference of no more than about 20 km/h (12 mph).

### Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You use the turn signal lever to signal a turn in the direction of the detected vehicle while the Blind Spot Information System alert indicator is on.


- ▶ The beeper sounds three times.

## ▣ Blind Spot Information System\*

For proper Blind Spot Information System operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper and area around the radar sensors clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur:

- The Blind Spot Information System alert indicator does not come and the  **Blind spot information not available** appears on the driver information interface.
- The Blind Spot Information System alert indicator may come on even with the message displayed.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Blind Spot Information System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

📖 **Safety Support** P. 152

The Blind Spot Information System will stay on the previously selected on or off setting each time you turn the power system on.

## 📖 Blind Spot Information System\*

You can change the setting for the Blind Spot Information System.

📖 **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Blind Spot Information System Conditions and Limitations

The Blind Spot Information System alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- There is a large speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- The vehicle driving in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The Blind Spot Information System may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well or a motorcycle is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up signal interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors is covered by dirt, mud, snow, ice, etc.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors has been damaged or deformed.
- In bad weather (heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a short turn or driving on a bumpy road that slightly tilts the vehicle.
- An object such as a bicycle rack is attached to the rear of the vehicle.

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has the following functions.

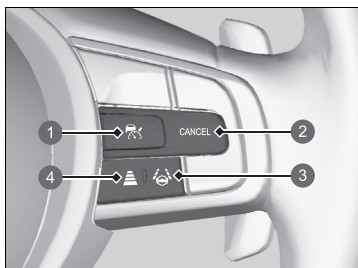
## ■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate


- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ⓘ P. 411
- Road Departure Mitigation System ⓘ P. 463
- Traffic Sign Recognition System ⓘ P. 471

## ■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ⓘ P. 424
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ⓘ P. 441
- Traffic Jam Assist ⓘ P. 453

## ■ Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist

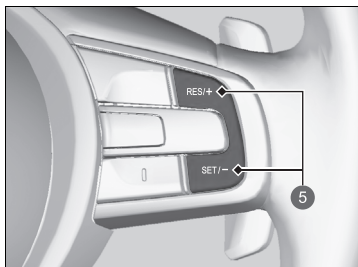


**1**  **Button**  
Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow.  
Or press to cancel the system.

**2** **CANCEL Button**  
Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

**3** **LKAS Button**  
Press to activate standby mode for LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist.  
Or press to cancel these systems.

**4** **Interval Button**  
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.



**5** **RES/+ and SET/- Buttons**  
Press the **RES/+** button to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.  
Press the **SET/-** button to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.



- ⑤ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.
  - White: Set Vehicle Speed
  - Grey: Prior Set Speed
- ⑥ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.
- ⑦ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the setting status.
  - Green: The system is on.
  - Grey: The system is not activated.



## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle).

The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

### Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

#### Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

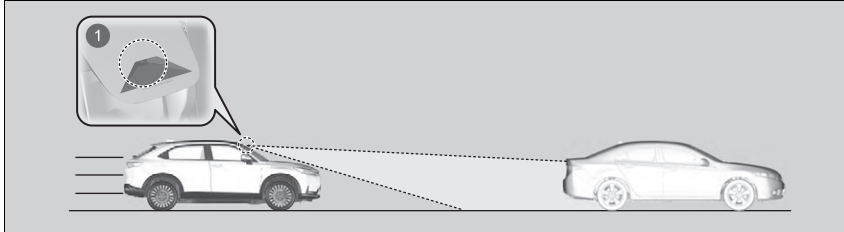
➤ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 416

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

➤ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 478

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

## ■ How the system works



1 The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h (3 mph) or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h (3 mph) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h (18 mph) or less and there is a chance of in frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle when you turn left\*<sup>1</sup>/right\*<sup>2</sup> at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h (62 mph) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
  - An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
  - A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.
  - A vehicle approaching from the side in front of you.

\*1 : Left-hand drive type

\*2 : Right-hand drive type

## ▶ How the system works

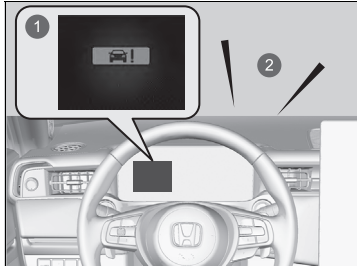
The front wide view camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians. However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions. Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 416

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.

The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

### ■ When the system activates



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

- ① Visual Alerts
- ② Audible Alert

You can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

🔧 **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 331

## ■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles	CMBS		
	The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one 	There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in <b>Far</b> , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in <b>Normal</b> setting, and in <b>Near</b> , at a shorter distance than in <b>Normal</b> .	—
Stage two 	The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three 	The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

- ① Your Vehicle
- ② Vehicle Ahead
- ③ **Far**
- ④ **Normal**
- ⑤ **Near**

Driving

## ■ CMBS On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

📖 **Safety Support** P. 152

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## 📖 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

📖 **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 416

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

## ■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the front wide view camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

➤ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 478

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles [including motorcycles], pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

**■ Vehicle conditions**

- Tyre chains are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the front wide view camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, vehicles approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, a vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, a vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- A bicycle or sideways-facing vehicle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is sideways.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, a vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by luggage.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre (3.3 feet) or taller than about 2 metres (6.6 feet) in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle is approaching diagonally from the side.
- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a luggage) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

⊠ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.



**■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation**

- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle approaching from the side is significantly large.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left<sup>\*1</sup>/right<sup>\*2</sup> at an intersection etc.)<sup>\*3</sup>.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, a vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) that has an extremely high minimum ground clearance is ahead of you or approaching from the side.

\*1: Left-hand drive type

\*2: Right-hand drive type

\*3: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left<sup>\*1</sup>/right<sup>\*2</sup>, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

### ■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

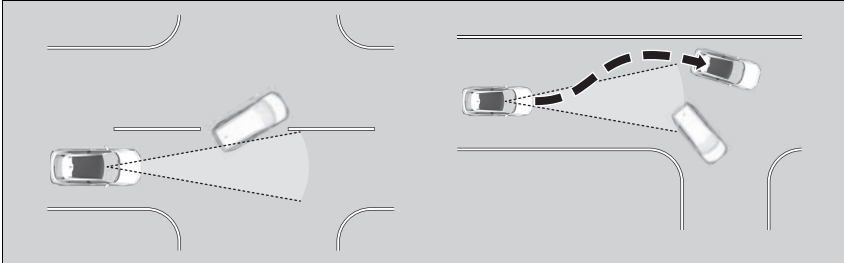
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front wide view camera temperature gets too high.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

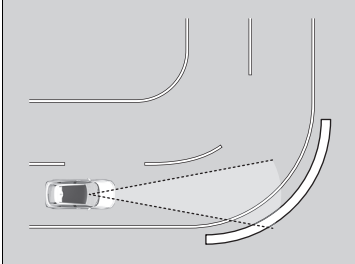
## ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions:

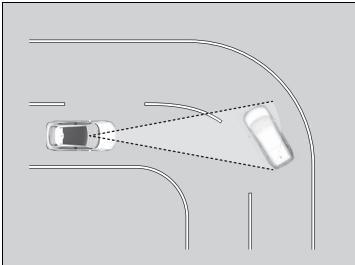
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle at an intersection, etc.



- When passing through a low or narrow gate at a speed well over the speed limit.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails are beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



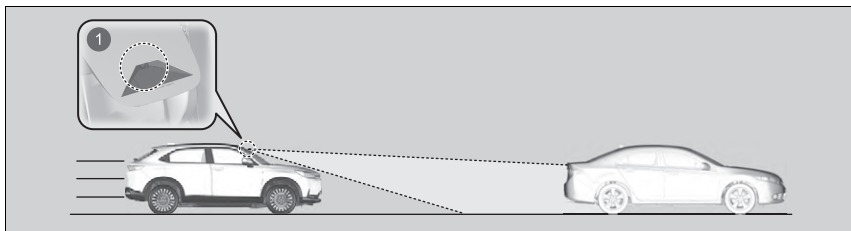
- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

- A vehicle approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is turning left or right.
- You pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle turns left or right while approaching your vehicle from the side.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- You pass close by the side of a vehicle parked on the street.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.



- ① A front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.
- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 160 km/h (99 mph).  
**No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h (18 mph) or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In **D**.

### ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

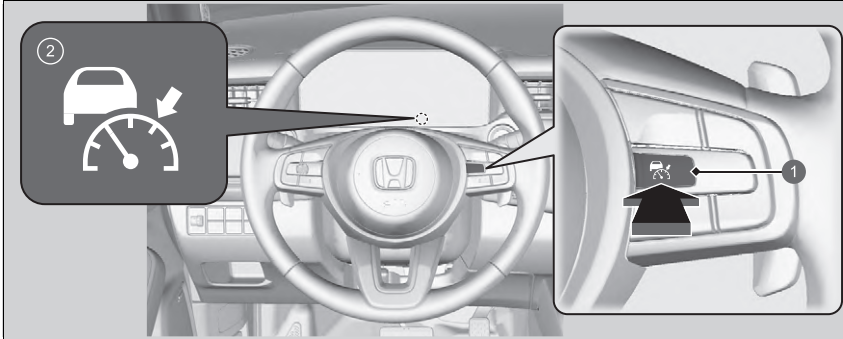
#### **Important Reminder**

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 478

## ■ How to activate the system



- 1 Button  
Press the button on the steering wheel.
- 2 **The Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**  
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

### ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

## ⚠ WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

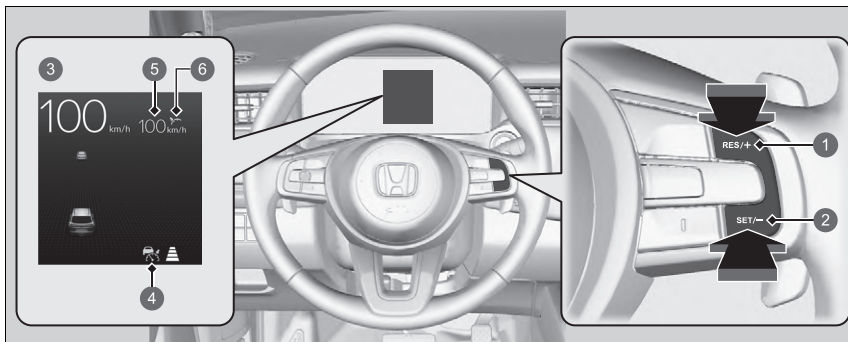
Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.


ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

▶ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 431

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow:  
Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



- 1 **RES/+** Button  
Press and release
- 2 **SET/-** Button  
Press and release
- 3 On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins
- 4  Indicator (Green)
- 5 Set Vehicle Speed (White)
- 6 Setting Status (Green)

## ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

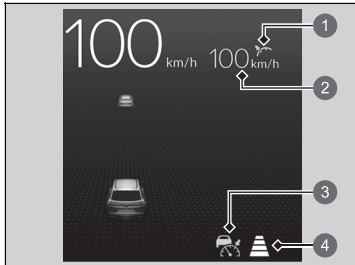
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.




**When driving at about 30 km/h (18 mph) or above:** Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

**When driving slower than about 30 km/h (18 mph):** If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h (18 mph) regardless of current vehicle speed.

If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the gauge.

- ① Setting Status (Green)
- ② Set Vehicle Speed
- ③  Indicator (Green)
- ④ Set Vehicle Interval

▶▶ To Set the Vehicle Speed

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or audio/information screen between km/h and mph.

▶▶ **Speed/Distance Units** P. 153

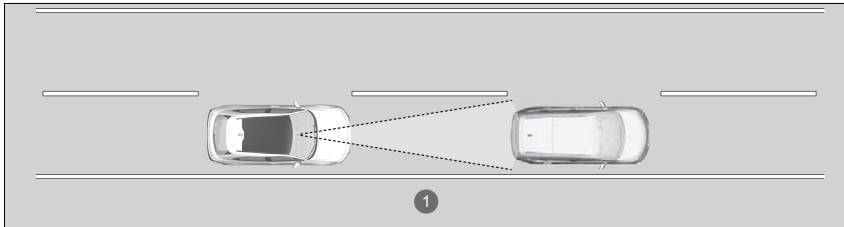
▶▶ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

## ■ When in Operation

### ■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

➤ **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 436



① ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m

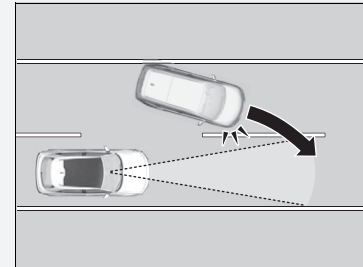


① A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

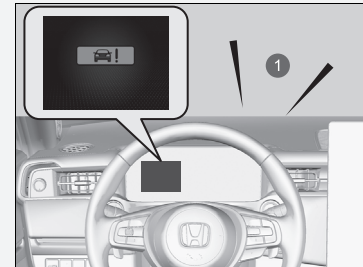
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

## ▶ When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



① Audible Alert

### ■ There is no vehicle ahead



Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

On steep downhill during ACC with Low Speed Follow, it brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

### ■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

#### ⌘ When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

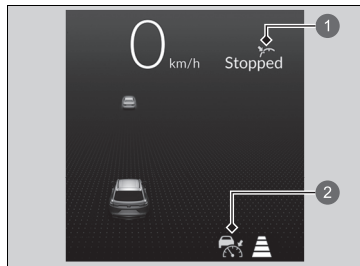
➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331


#### Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

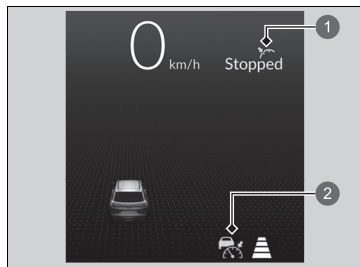
➤ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 431

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



- 1 Setting Status (Green)
- 2  Indicator (Green)

Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the previously set speed.

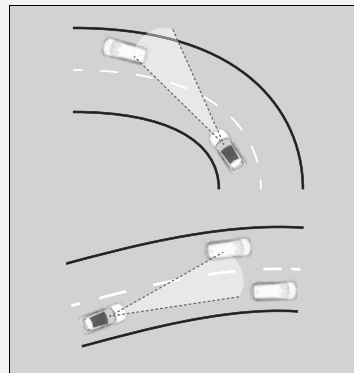


- 1 Setting Status (Green)
- 2  Indicator (Green)

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

⌘ When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g. curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g. operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

## ■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

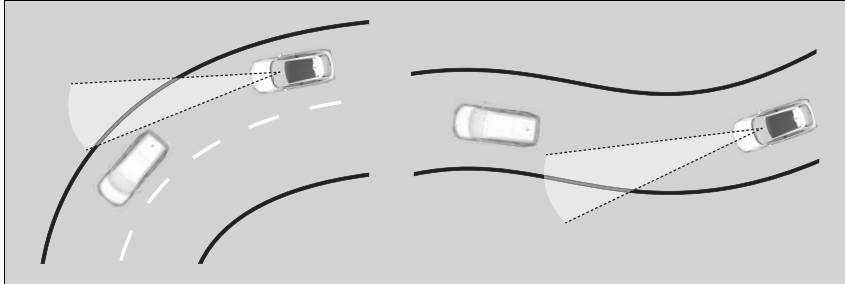
📷 **Front Wide View Camera** P. 478

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

### ■ Vehicle conditions

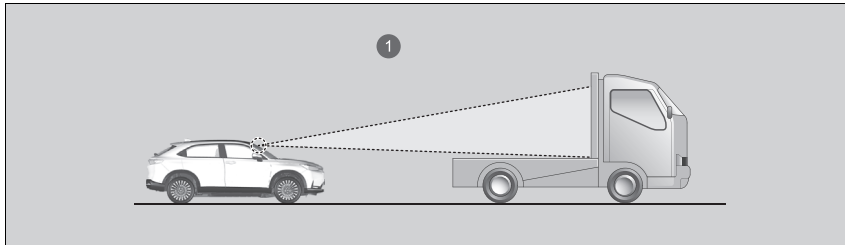
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

■ **Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

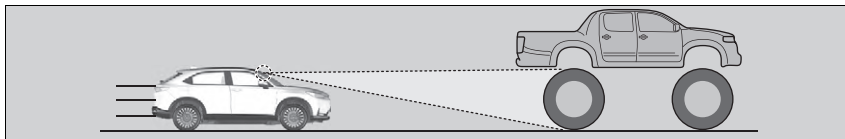
■ **Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly**

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle ahead of you is specially-shaped.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.



① A front wide view camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.

- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

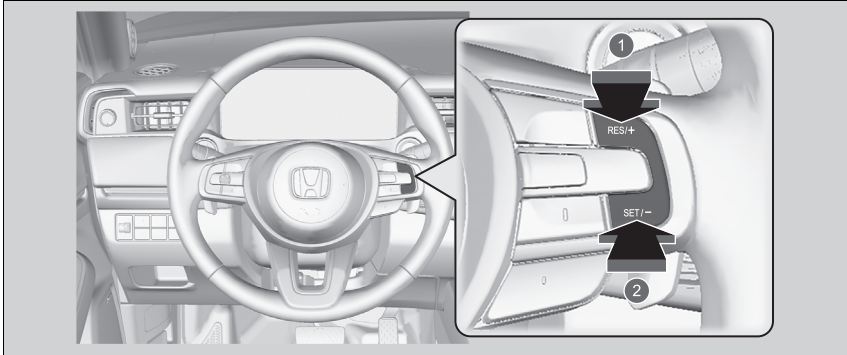


- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.



## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button on the steering wheel.



- ① To increase speed
- ② To decrease speed

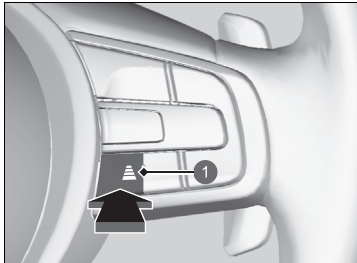
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h or 10 mph accordingly.

## ☒ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press and release the **SET/-** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

## ■ To Set or Change Following-interval







① Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

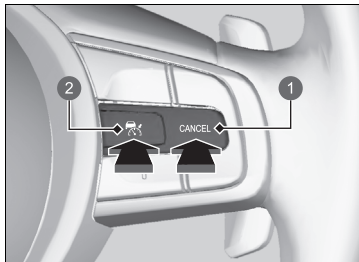
Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h (50 mph)	104 km/h (65 mph)
Short		26.6 metres 87.3 feet 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 110.6 feet 1.2 sec
Middle		34.6 metres 113.5 feet 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 147.3 feet 1.6 sec
Long		43.9 metres 144.0 feet 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 187.3 feet 2.0 sec
Extra Long		53.6 metres 175.9 feet 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 229.6 feet 2.4 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

⚠ To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

## ■ To Cancel



- ① **CANCEL** Button
- ② Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  - ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  - ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  - ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

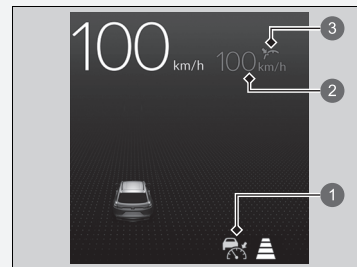
## ▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+** button even if the vehicle is stopped.

When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.

When pressing the **RES/+** button, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed.

If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+** button, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.





- ① Indicator (White)
- ② Prior Set Speed (Grey)
- ③ Setting Status (Grey)

## ■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the gauge when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

### ⌂ To Cancel

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the  button. Press the  button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

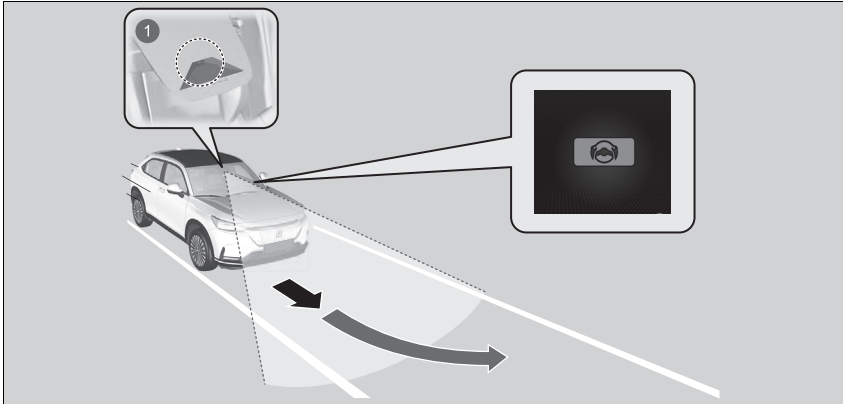
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

### ■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

### ■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



① Front wide view camera: Monitors the lane lines

### ☒ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

#### Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

☒ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 478

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

☒ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 449

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

#### ▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

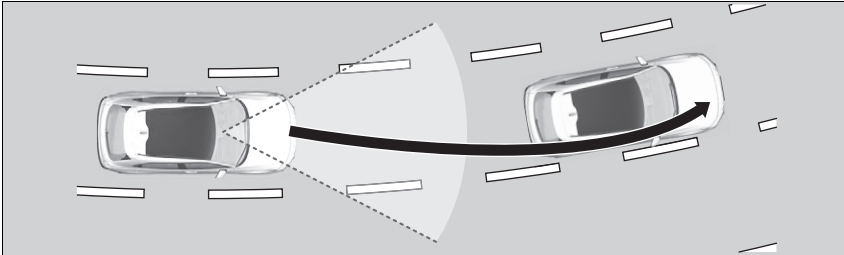
The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



## ■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.

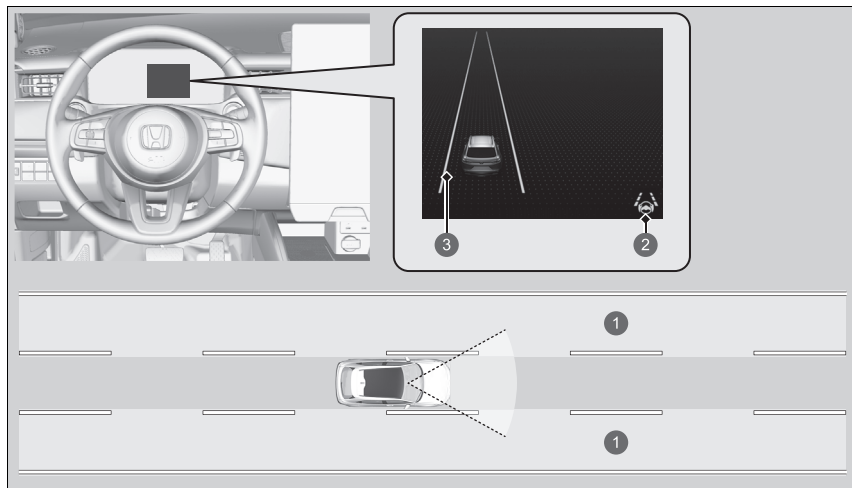


## ☒ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

## ■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



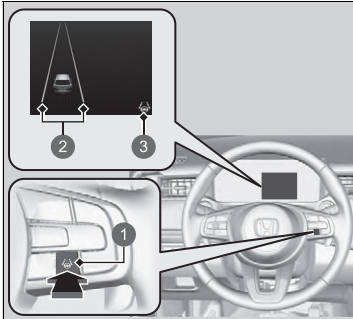
- ① Warning Area
- ② LKAS Indicator (Green)
- ③ Amber Line

## ■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

## ■ How to activate the system



- ① LKAS Button
- ② White Lines
- ③ LKAS Indicator (White)

1. Press the LKAS button.
  - ▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.  
The system is standby.
  - ▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

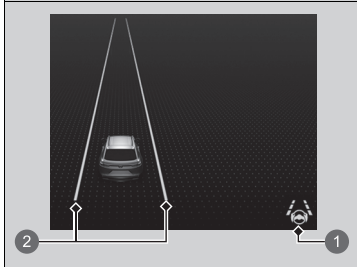
## ☒ When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Be sure to keep the following below to activate the system properly;

- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.

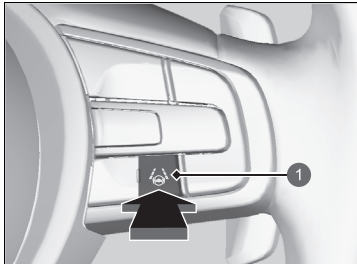
If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.



- ① LKAS Indicator (Green)
- ② Green Lines

2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
  - ▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

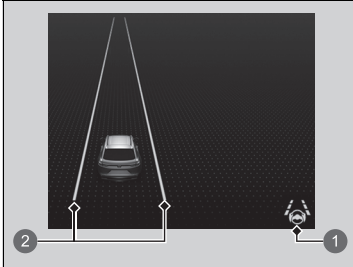
## ■ To Cancel



- ① LKAS Button

Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.



- ① LKAS Indicator (White)
- ② White Lines

When the LKAS is suspended, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or disappear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h (40 mph) or less.
  - ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h (45 mph) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.

☒ The system operation is suspended if you:

You can change the setting for the LKAS. LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.

▶ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

■ **The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:**

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
  - The steering wheel is turned quickly.
  - You fail to steer the vehicle.
  - Driving through a sharp curve.
  - Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h (115 mph).
  - The ABS or VSA system engages.
- Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:**

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The front wide view camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

## ■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

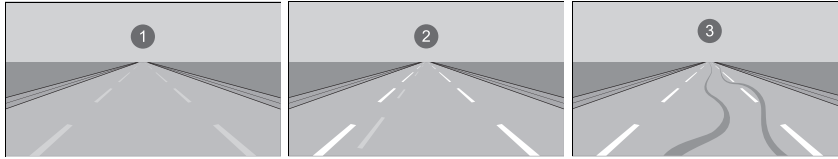
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

### ■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

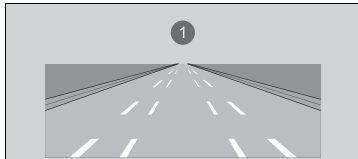
### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



① Faded lines      ② Duplicate lines      ③ Tyre tracks

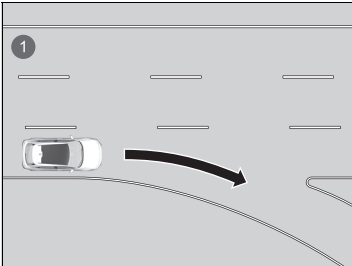
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- ① Very wide or narrow traffic lane
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
  - The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
  - Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
  - When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
  - Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.



- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



① Lane void of lines at junction

■ **Vehicle conditions**

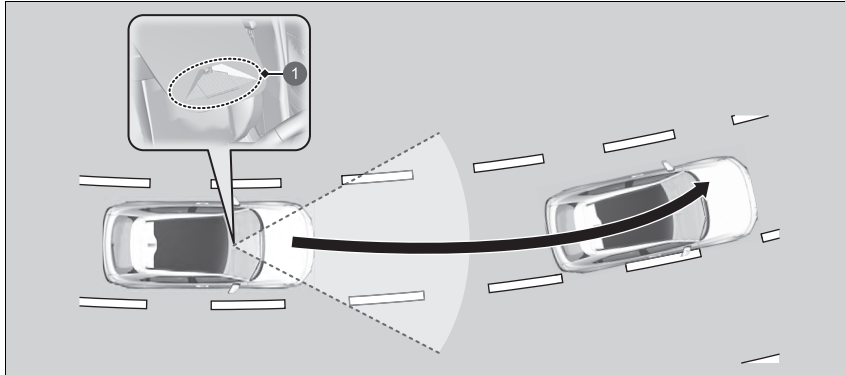
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

## Traffic Jam Assist

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the front wide view camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

### ■ How Traffic Jam Assist works

When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the Traffic Jam Assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help keep your vehicle in the centre of the lane.



- ① Front Wide View Camera  
Detects left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines

When you use the turn signal to indicate a lane change, Traffic Jam Assist is temporarily deactivated. It is reactivated once the vehicle is travelling in the centre of the lane and the system has detected the traffic lane lines.

### ☒ Traffic Jam Assist

#### Important Safety Reminders

Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

#### ☒ Front Wide View Camera P. 478

The Traffic Jam Assist only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Traffic Jam Assist may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

Traffic Jam Assist may not work properly under certain conditions:

#### ☒ Traffic Jam Assist: Conditions and Limitations P. 459

When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily cancelled.

The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.

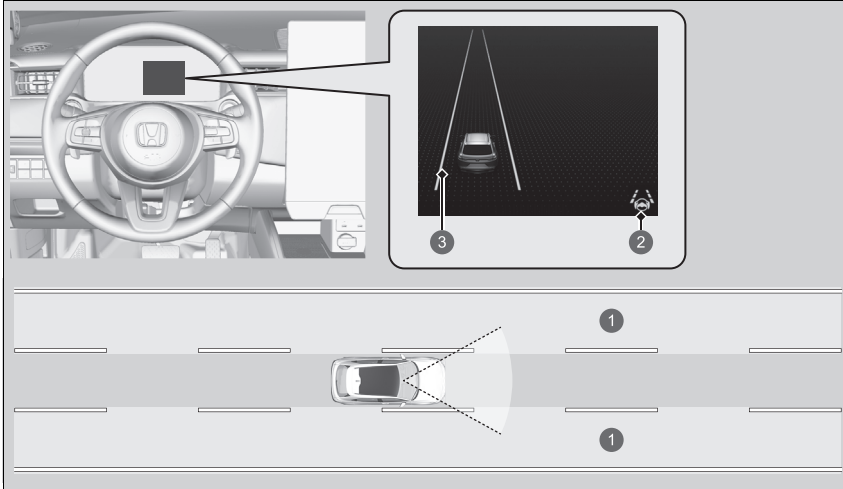
#### ▶▶ Traffic Jam Assist

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with an audible alert as well as a warning display.



- ① Warning Area
- ② LKAS Indicator (Green)
- ③ Amber Line

## ■ Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Traffic Jam Assist is activated when all of the following conditions exist:

- LKAS is activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 0 and 72 km/h (0 and 45 mph).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The shift position is in **[D]**.

Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:

- You are travelling on a road with sharp curves.
  - ▶ The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
  - ▶ The tyres may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.

## ▶▶ Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Refer to the following page for proper handling of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS):

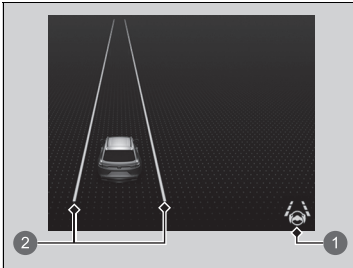
▶ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 441

Refer to the following page for steering buttons and displays:

▶ **Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist** P. 408

▶ **Gauge Content** P. 409

## How Traffic Jam Assist Works



- ① LKAS Indicator (Green)
- ② Green Lines

Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

- ▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

### How Traffic Jam Assist Works

If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda dealer.

In some cases the system cannot properly detect the traffic lane lines and, as a result, will not provide steering assistance.

#### ▶ Traffic Jam Assist: Conditions and Limitations P. 459

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning below will appear.



If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning above has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled.

## ■ Cancelling Traffic Jam Assist

Press the LKAS button to cancel Traffic Jam Assist.

### ■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

The system is automatically temporarily cancelled under the following circumstances.

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.

### ■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically cancelled when:

The traffic lane lines will disappear from the screen, the beeper may sound, and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled under the following circumstances:

- The temperature of the camera is too high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

### ▶▶ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

You are travelling over 72 km/h (45 mph).

- ▶ When the speed of the vehicle reaches 72 km/h (45 mph), Traffic Jam Assist is deactivated and LKAS is activated instead. Once the speed of the vehicle drops to under 64 km/h (40 mph), Traffic Jam Assist is reactivated.

You can change the setting for the Traffic Jam Assist. Traffic Jam Assist suspended beep on and off when you select the **Lane keep assist beep** on the audio/information screen.

#### ▶▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 331



## ■ Traffic Jam Assist: Conditions and Limitations

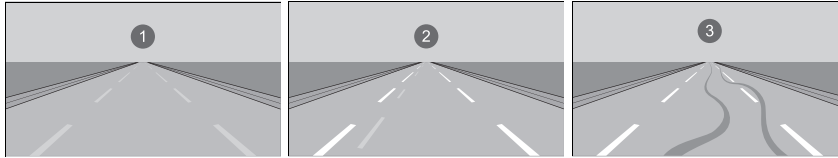
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

### ■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at a junction.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

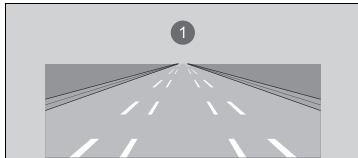
### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



① Faded lines      ② Duplicate lines      ③ Tyre tracks

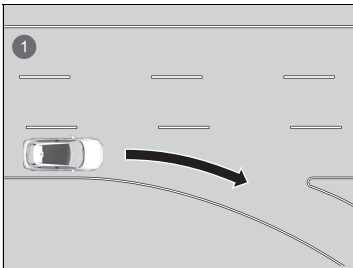
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



① Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



① Lane void of lines at junction

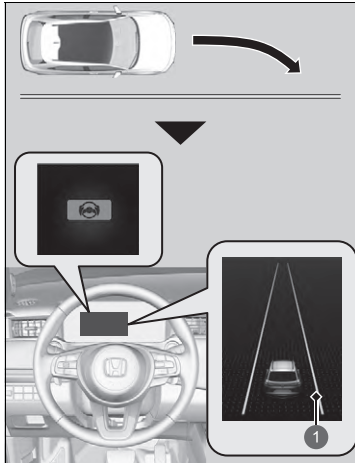
### ■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

## Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

### How the System Works



1 Amber Line

The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings in white or yellow, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or a detected oncoming vehicles.

If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or a detected oncoming vehicles when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

- ▶ If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles. In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane.

#### How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 331

As a visual alert,  **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

### Road Departure Mitigation System

#### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations. Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system alerts you when the system detects that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border), an oncoming vehicle, or drifting into another lane without using a turn signal.

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or every instance of lane drift.

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or an oncoming vehicle.

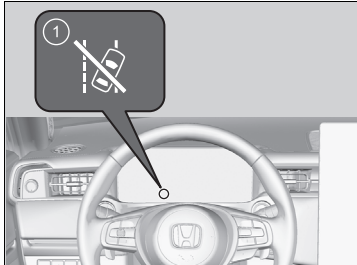
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not be able to assist you depending on weather, speed or road conditions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

 **Front Wide View Camera** P. 478

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or an oncoming vehicle.



- 1 Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

#### ▶▶ Road Departure Mitigation System

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

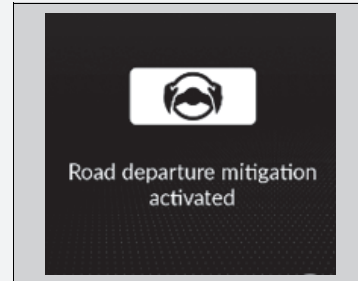
#### ▶▶ Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations P. 467

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.

If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into a grass or gravel border) or oncoming vehicle.

#### ▶▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 331



## How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The lane markings is white (yellow).
  - ▶ The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph).
    - ▶ When oncoming vehicles are running
      - ▶ The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h (18 and 112 mph).
- The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel border.
  - ▶ The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h (18 and 112 mph).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.

## How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Road Departure Mitigation indicator (amber) come and stay on.

▶ **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 120

▶ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 121

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

*Continued*

## ■ Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 139

➤ **Safety Support** P. 152

The Road Departure Mitigation system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ▣ Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



## Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings (in white or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or an oncoming vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

**■ Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

**■ Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles**

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation**

- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

■ **With Little Chance of a Collision**

The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

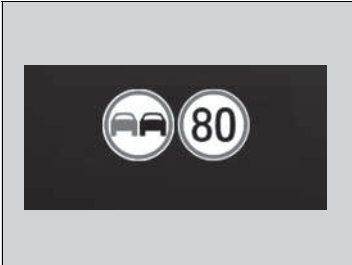
- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

## Traffic Sign Recognition System

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, and notifies you if your vehicle is exceeding the speed limit.

### How the System Works

The system displays signs recognised as designated for your vehicle using information captured by the camera located behind the rear view mirror from traffic signs and data from the navigation system while driving. The sign icon is usually displayed before passing the sign, and continues to be displayed until another sign is recognised.



The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits a road with a different speed limit.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

#### Traffic Sign Recognition System

In order to maintain system functionality, it is necessary to keep speed limit information on the Navigation System up to date. Update Navigation System map information regularly.

#### Refer to the Navigation System Manual

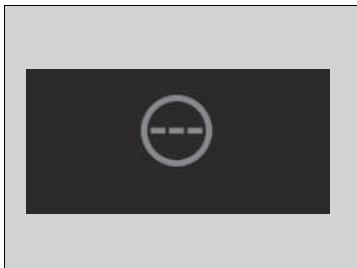
The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

*Continued*

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the  (white) will appear.




#### Traffic Sign Recognition System

The Traffic Sign Recognition System is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can turn the traffic sign recognition system on and off.

If **None** is selected,  (grey) will appear.

 **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.  
Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

 **Front Wide View Camera** P. 478

## ■ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may incorrectly recognise, be slow to identify, or fail to recognise the traffic sign in the following case.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

*Continued*

## ☒ Traffic Sign Recognition System

You can change the settings for the notification sound that plays when the detected speed limit changes.

### ☒ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 331

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display, and the beeper will sound if you continue to exceed the detected speed limit. However, the beeper will not sound if your vehicle is slowing down.

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.

### ☒ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations P. 473

The unit for speed limits (km/h or mph) varies from country to country. Just after entering a country whose unit differs to the one of the country from which you came, Traffic Sign Recognition System may not work correctly.

### ☒ Speed/Distance Units P. 153

### ☒ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 331


### ■ The position or the condition of the traffic sign

- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged signs.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

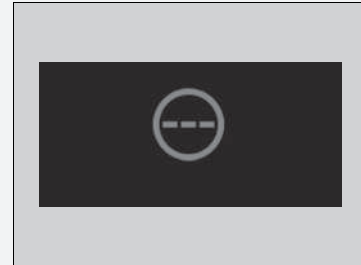
### ■ Other conditions

- When you are driving at a high speed.

### ▶▶ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

 (amber) appears on the gauge in the following cases. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

- There is a problem with the Traffic Sign Recognition System.
- Immediately after turning on the power system (including when it is started remotely).
- Navigation system map data is being updated.





The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases:

- ▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.
- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the signs are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at the junction between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in colour or shape to recognised objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

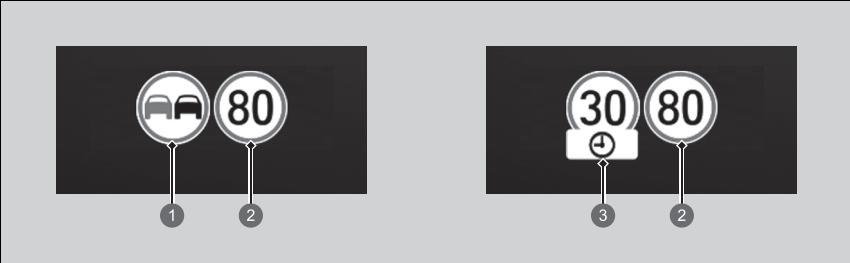
### ■ Situations where correct speed limit sign information cannot be provided for the area

In the following situations, the display may differ from the regulations of the roadway you are driving on, and/or the display may be delayed:

- A new road has been built.
- The speed limit has changed.
- The speed limit information stored in the navigation database is outdated or inaccurate.
- When driving in areas where the information cannot be used or on alleyways without signs.
- The vehicle path that the sensor detected and the actual vehicle path are different.
- There are adjacent roads with speed limits different from the one you are driving on.
- The sign is a temporary speed limit sign with non-standard features (such as design, etc.).
- When driving in a place with poor GPS reception, such as in tunnels or around skyscrapers.
- The vehicle repeatedly stops and starts at a low speed.
- When driving on a route different from the navigation guidance.
- There are continuous steep slopes or curves.
- There is a variable speed limit.

### ■ Signs Displayed on the Gauge

Two traffic signs can be simultaneously displayed next to each other when detected. The speed limit sign icon is displayed on the right half of the screen. The overtaking prohibition sign icon appears on the left. Any additional sign that indicated speed limit based on weather (snow, etc.) or specific period of time will appear on the left side.

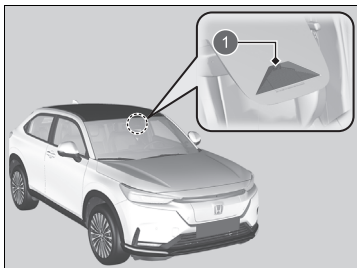


- ① Overtaking Prohibition Sign
- ② Speed Limit Sign
- ③ Additional Speed Limit Sign Based on Conditions

## Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Traffic Sign Recognition System, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) and Traffic Jam Assist, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

### Camera Location and Handling Tips



1 Front Wide View Camera

This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

### Front Wide View Camera


Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.


After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

## ▶▶ Front Wide View Camera

If the  **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the  **Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.** message appears:

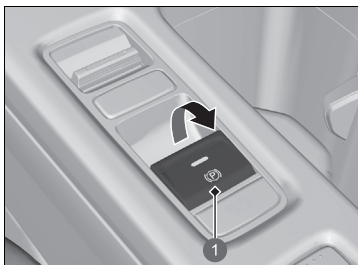
- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean.

Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Brake System

### ■ Parking Brake

Use the electric parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



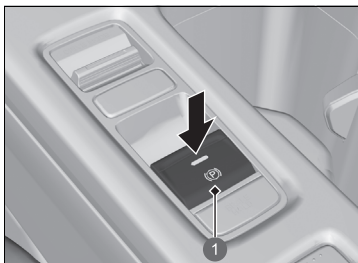
1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

#### ■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

#### ■ To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
  - ▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

### » Brake System

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the power system compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

### » Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the electric parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the electric parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the electric parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

▶ **If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 644

**If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.**

## ■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

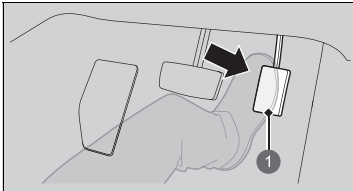
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

🔧 **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 482

## ■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the electric parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



① Accelerator Pedal

Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

You can release the electric parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

## 🔧 Parking Brake

In the following situations, the electric parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the power system is turned off, while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off, while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

If the electric parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The electric parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicator is on:

- Transmission system indicator

### ■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode set to ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Change the shift position to **P**.
2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
  - ▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.
3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
  - ▶ Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
  - ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
  - ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the power system.
  - ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when having your vehicle towed. You can follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
  - ▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
  - ▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off the automatic brake hold system.
  - ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

#### ▶▶ Parking Brake

The electric parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

#### ▶▶ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyortype car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.



## Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 488

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 487

## Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Applying constant pressure to the brakes while going down a long hill can cause the brakes to heat up, resulting in a loss of stopping power. Therefore, when descending a long hill, release the accelerator pedal and allow regenerative braking to slow the vehicle down. To adjust the rate of deceleration, use the deceleration paddle selector.

When the high voltage battery has fully recharged, regenerative braking may not be possible.

➤ **POWER/CHARGE Gauge** P. 137

➤ **High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge**  
P. 137

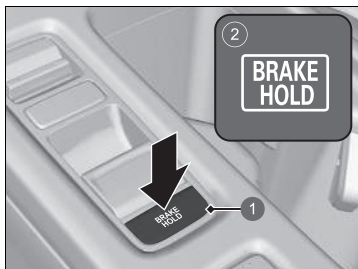
➤ **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 388

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

## ■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

### ■ Turning on the system



- 1 Automatic Brake Hold Button
- 2 Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

The system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you fasten the driver's seat belt and start the power system.

## ►► Automatic Brake Hold

### ⚠ WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

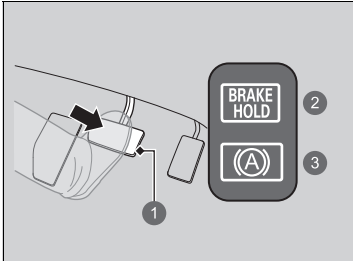
### ⚠ WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

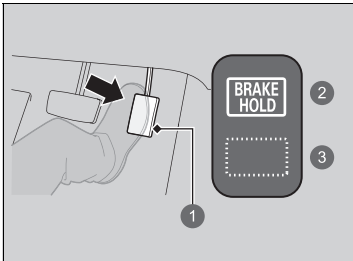
Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.

## ■ Activating the system



- 1 Brake Pedal
- 2 On
- 3 Comes On

## ■ Cancelling the system



- 1 Accelerator Pedal
- 2 On
- 3 Goes Off

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in **P** or **R**.

- ▶ The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than **P** or **N**. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

- ▶ The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

### Automatic Brake Hold

## ⚠ WARNING

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

While the system is activated, you can turn off the power system or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

▶ **When Stopped** P. 490

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

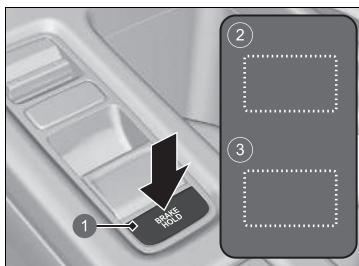
■ **The system automatically cancels when:**

- You engage the electric parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into **P** or **R**.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**



- ① Automatic Brake Hold Button
- ② Goes Off
- ③ Goes Off

Only the automatic brake hold system indicator comes on:

- Press the automatic brake hold button.
  - The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

When the automatic brake hold indicator comes on at the same time:

- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.
  - The automatic brake hold system indicator and the automatic brake hold indicator go off.

►► Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

If you turn off the power system or unfasten the driver's seat belt while the automatic brake hold system is on, the automatic brake hold system will automatically turn off. In this case, when the driver's seat belt is fastened and the power system is turned back on, the automatic brake hold system will turn on without needing to press the automatic brake hold button.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### ■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h (6 mph), the ABS stops.

### »» Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the motor compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been turned on and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

## Brake Assist System

---

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

### ■ Brake assist system operation

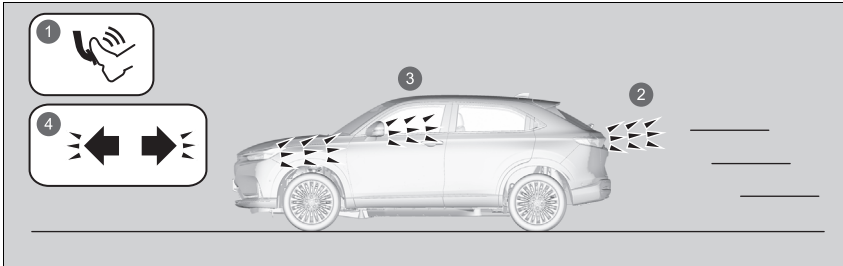
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

## Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 50 km/h (31 mph) or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

### ■ When the system activates:



- ① Hard Braking
- ② Brake Lights Come On
- ③ Hazard Warning Lights Flash
- ④ Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

### ☒ Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

## When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly and come to a complete stop.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Put the transmission into **P**.
  - ▶ Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.
4. Turn off the power system.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always set the electric parking brake, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

### » Parking Your Vehicle

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

### » When Stopped

#### **NOTICE**

The following can damage the driveline:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal. Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

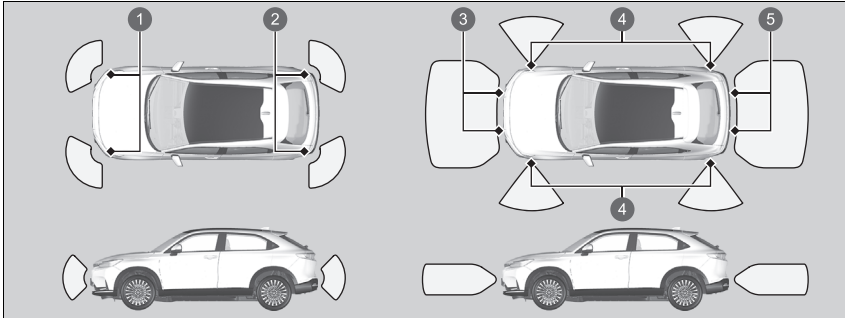
In extremely cold temperatures, the electric parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the electric parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.



## Parking Sensor System

The corner, side\* and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



- ❶ Front Corner Sensors
- ❷ Rear Corner Sensors
- ❸ Front Centre Sensors
- ❹ Side Sensors\*
- ❺ Rear Centre Sensors

\* Not available on all models

### ⊠ Parking Sensor System

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:

- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

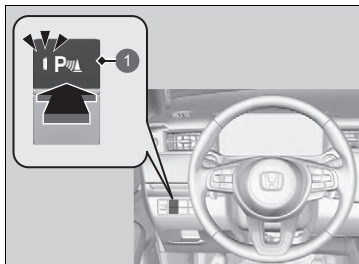
Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

▶ If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

⊠ **Turning off All Rear Sensors** P. 497

Continued

## ■ Parking sensor system on and off



1 Parking Sensor System Button

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than **P** or **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

### Models with Multi-View Camera

When Honda Parking Pilot is in operation, the Parking Sensor System will turn on, and all parking sensors will start to monitor obstacles while the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner, rear centre and rear corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

## ▶▶ Parking Sensor System

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

### Models with Multi-View Camera

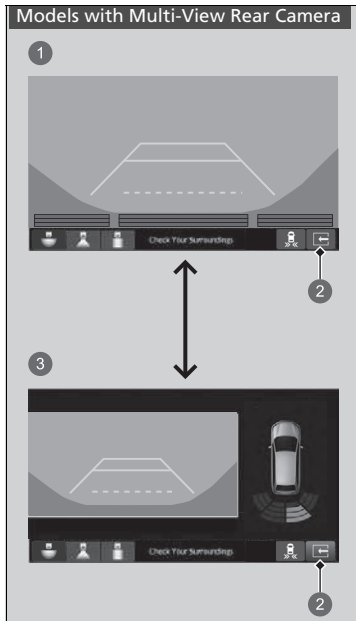
When the vehicle is moving forward at 8 km/h (5 mph) or less, the system detects any obstacles in front of the vehicle and the forward camera image will display as the distance between them decreases.

▶ **Multi-View Camera**\* P. 504

You can customize whether or not to display the forward camera image when an obstacle is detected.

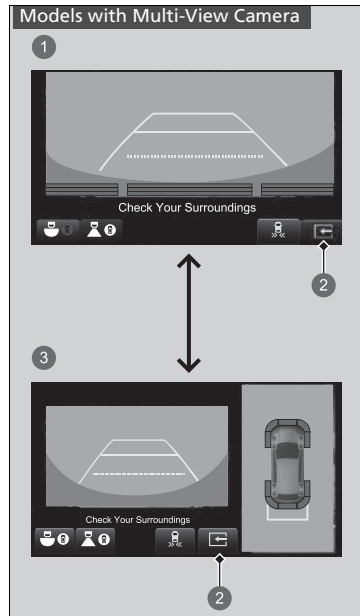
▶ **Customized Features** P. 321

## ■ Screen Operation



You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

- ① Split View Off
- ② Split Screen Tab
- ③ Split View On



- 1 Split View Off
- 2 Split Screen Tab
- 3 Split View On

■ When the distance between your vehicle and detected obstacles becomes shorter



**Parking Sensor Indicator**

The parking sensor indicator blinks.

▶ If the system is turned off, only the parking sensor indicator will blink when an obstacle is detected.

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface	Audio/Information screen
	Corner Sensors/ Side Sensors*4	Centre Sensors			
Moderate	—	Front: About 100-60 cm (39-24 inches) Rear: About 110-60 cm (43-24 inches)	Comes on*1/Blinks*2 in Yellow*3		
Short	About 60-45 cm (24-17 inches)	About 60-45 cm (24-17 inches)	Comes on*1/Blinks*2 in Amber*5		
Very short*5	About 45-35 cm (17-13 inches)	About 45-35 cm (17-13 inches)			
Continuous*5	About 35 cm (13 inches) or less	About 35 cm (13 inches) or less	Comes on*1/Blinks*2 in Red*5		

Driving

\*1: On the driver information interface

\*2: On the audio/information screen

\*3: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

\*4: While Honda Parking Pilot\* is in operation, the sensors located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers can also operate.

\*5: While Honda Parking Pilot\* is in operation, the intermittent beep sounds continuously or very short, and the indicator blinks in red or amber.

① Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

## ■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

To deactivate the rear sensors, please take the following steps:

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated.
  - ▶ The indicator in the button turns off.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
3. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
4. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds once.
5. While the indicator is flashing, press the button again. The indicator in the button turns off.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off. They will remain turned off until manually turned back on again. To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

### ☒ Turning off All Rear Sensors

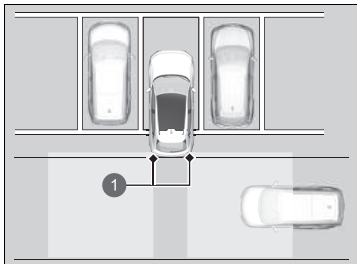
When you put the transmission into [R], the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

## Cross Traffic Monitor\*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient especially when you are getting out of a parking space backwards.

### How the System Works



① Radar sensors: Underneath the rear bumper corners

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  - ▶ **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 501
- The transmission is in **[R]**.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h (3 mph) or lower.

### ⚠ Cross Traffic Monitor\*

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 10 km/h and 25 km/h (6 mph and 16 mph).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.



⌘ Cross Traffic Monitor\*

- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.

The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.

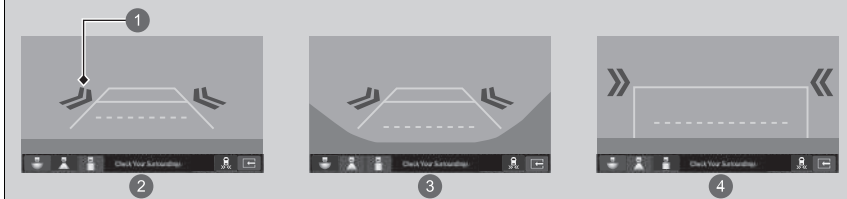
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the Cross Traffic Monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

\* Not available on all models

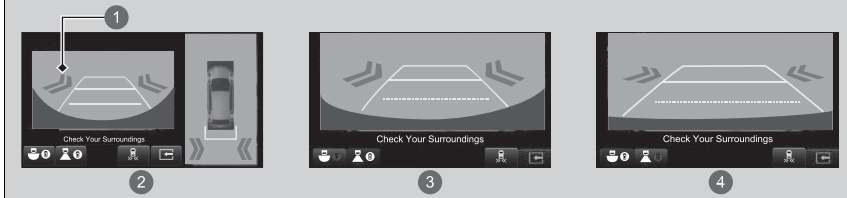
## ■ When the System Detects a Vehicle

### Models with Multi-View Rear Camera



- ① Arrow Icon
- ② Normal View
- ③ Wide View
- ④ Top Down View



### Models with Multi-View Camera




- ① Arrow Icon
- ② Rear Ground View
- ③ Rear Wide View
- ④ Rear Normal View

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

## ▶▶ When the System Detects a Vehicle

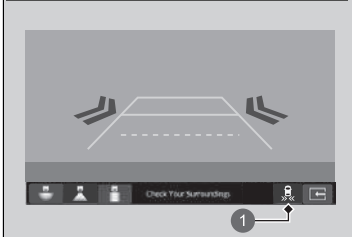
If the  on the lower right changes to  in amber when the transmission is in **R**, mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the  comes on when the transmission is in **R**, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in **R**, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off

### Models with Multi-View Rear Camera



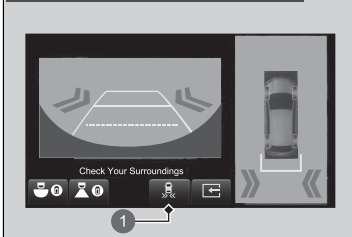
① Cross Traffic Monitor Icon

The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by selecting the Cross Traffic Monitor icon.

You can also switch the system on and off from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 321

### Models with Multi-View Camera

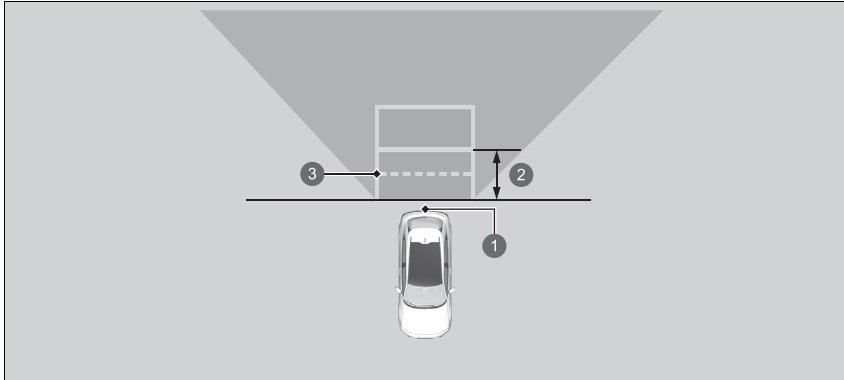


① Cross Traffic Monitor Icon

## About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into **R**.

### Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



- 1 Camera
- 2 Approx. 1 m (39 inches)
- 3 Tailgate open range

### About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

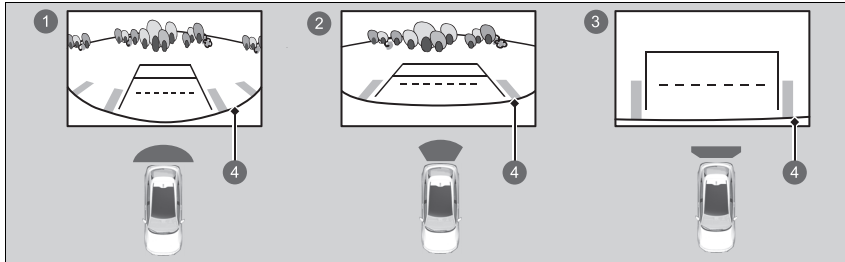
The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.





Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

The rear camera view is displayed prior to the audio/information screen.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



- 1  Wide view mode
- 2  Normal view mode
- 3  Top down view mode
- 4  Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power system, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of **R**, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode and put the transmission back into **R** within 10 seconds after you took it out of **R**, Top down view mode will be activated.

#### ▶ About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 321

#### **Fixed Guideline**

**ON:** Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into **R**.

**OFF:** Guidelines do not appear.

#### **Dynamic Guideline**

**ON:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

**OFF:** Guidelines do not move.

If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the audio/information screen while the shift position is in **R**, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

When the parking sensor system detects any obstacles, the indicator will display.

▶ **Parking Sensor System** P. 491

Is a four camera system that views areas commonly known as “blind spots” from different angles, then displays the images on the audio/information screen. This system can be used to:

- Check for obstacles when you are moving in **R**.
  - **Checking for Obstacles at the Back of Your Vehicle** P. 511
- Check the right and left sides of the vehicle while crossing at intersections with poor visibility (obstructed view, etc.).
  - **Checking from the front blind view at intersections** P. 515
- Check for obstacles in front of the vehicle when parking or maneuvering in confined areas.

## Multi-View Camera\*

### **WARNING**

Failure to visually assess the area around the vehicle (directly or by use of the mirrors) may result in a crash causing serious injury or death.

The areas shown in the multi-view camera system display are limited. The display may not show all pedestrians or other objects around your vehicle.

Do not solely rely only on the multi-view camera system display to assess whether it is safe to move your vehicle.

### **WARNING**

Failure to pay proper attention to your surroundings while driving may result in a crash causing serious injury or death.

To help mitigate the chances of a collision, only look at the multi-view camera system display when it is safe to do so.

The multi-view camera system does not eliminate all blind spots. The system is for your convenience only.

## ■ Displaying an Image From the Multi-View Cameras



1 **CAMERA** button

### ■ For frontal views:

Press the **CAMERA** button or select **Multi View Camera** when the vehicle is stationary or moving at 20 km/h (12 mph) or slower. Press the button again to switch camera views.

### ■ For rear views:

Change the shift position to **R** when the vehicle is stationary. Press the **CAMERA** button again to switch to rear view mode. You can customize the display setting.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 321



1 **Multi View Camera**

## ▶▶ Multi-View Camera\*

Always keep the camera lenses clean and free from debris.

When the parking sensor system detects any obstacles, the indicator will display.

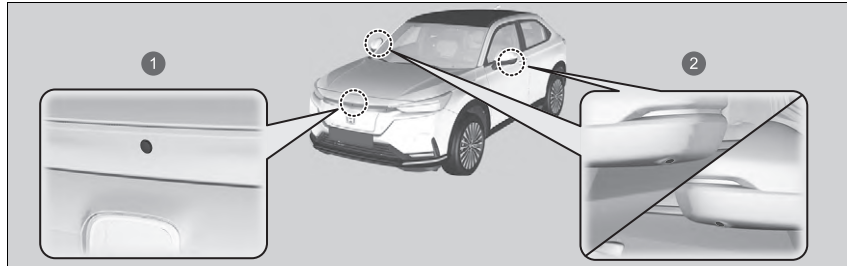
▶ **Parking Sensor System** P. 491

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you.

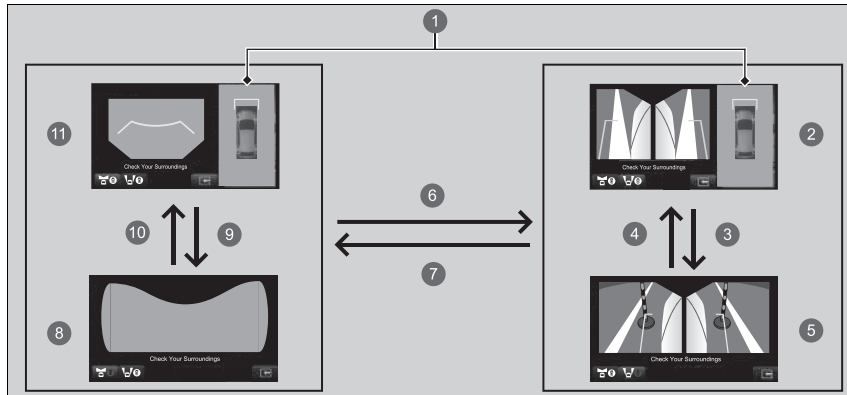
▶ **Cross Traffic Monitor\*** P. 498

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Camera Locations and Images

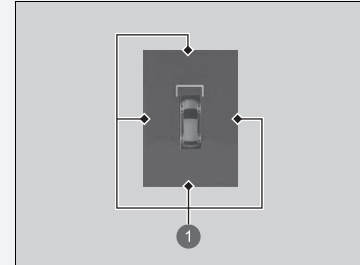


- ① Front View Camera
- ② Side View Cameras



## ☒ Camera Locations and Images





















While Honda Parking Pilot is in operation, indicators light where the camera detects an obstacle on the Honda Parking Pilot Display.



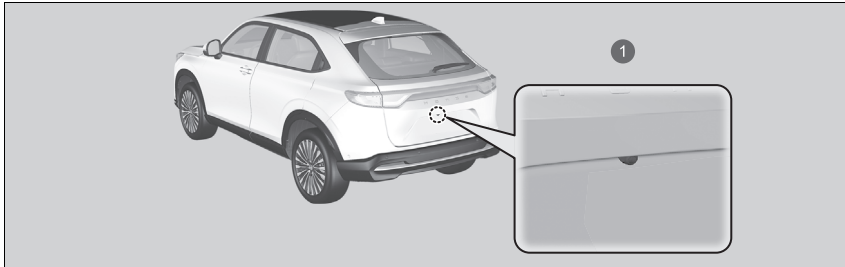
- ① indicators light up where the camera detects an obstacle

☒ **Honda Parking Pilot\***  
P. 518

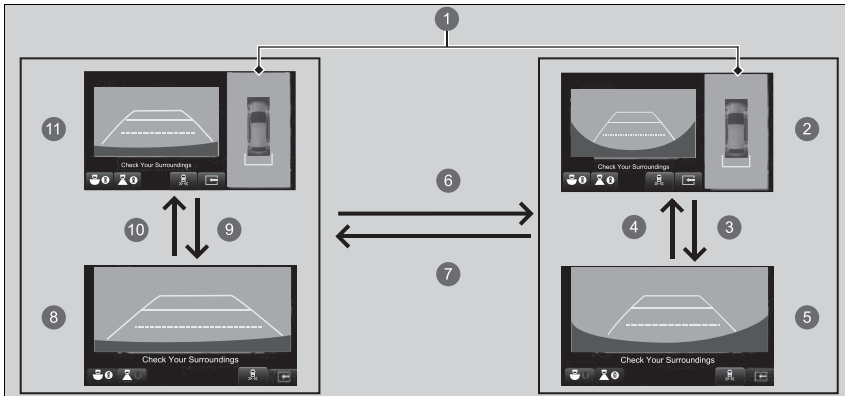


- 1 Ground View: An overhead view created by the combination of images captured by four cameras.
- 2 Left and Right Side View + Ground View
- 3   or 
- 4   or 
- 5 Left and Right Side View
- 6   or   or **CAMERA** button
- 7   or  
- 8 Front Blind View
- 9   or 
- 10   or 
- 11 Front View + Ground View

The unique multi-view camera lenses make distances appear differently than they actually are - objects seen on the audio/information screen may appear closer or further away, and may be distorted. This becomes more apparent the further away an object is from your vehicle.













1 Rear View Camera



1 Ground View: An overhead view created by the combination of images captured by four cameras.

2 Rear Wide View + Ground View

3 or

- 4  or 
- 5 Rear Wide View
- 6  or  or **CAMERA** button
- 7  or  or **CAMERA** button
- 8 Rear Normal View
- 9  or 
- 10  or 
- 11 Rear Normal View + Ground View

The unique multi-view camera lenses make distances appear differently than they actually are - objects seen on the audio/information screen may appear closer or further away, and may be distorted. This becomes more apparent the further away an object is from your vehicle.

## ■ Reference Lines and Guide Lines

Following can be displayed when the multi-view camera system is on.

**Fixed Guideline:** Helps you to get a sense of a distance between your vehicle and the surroundings. The distance may appear differently than the actual distance.

**Dynamic Guideline:** Indicates vehicle direction while the steering wheel is in the current position.

## ▶▶ Displaying an Image From the Multi-View Cameras

The navigation system is disabled when the shift position is in **R**.

If you press the **CAMERA** button or select **Multi View Camera** while the vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h (16 mph), the standby screen appears. When the vehicle speed is reduced below 20 km/h (12 mph), the screen switches to a multi-view camera system image.

The positions/distances indicated by the guidelines and camera views on the display may differ from the actual positions/distances due to the changes in the vehicle height, road conditions, and other factors. The guidelines should be used as a reference only.

The guidelines can be turned on and off using the audio/information screen.

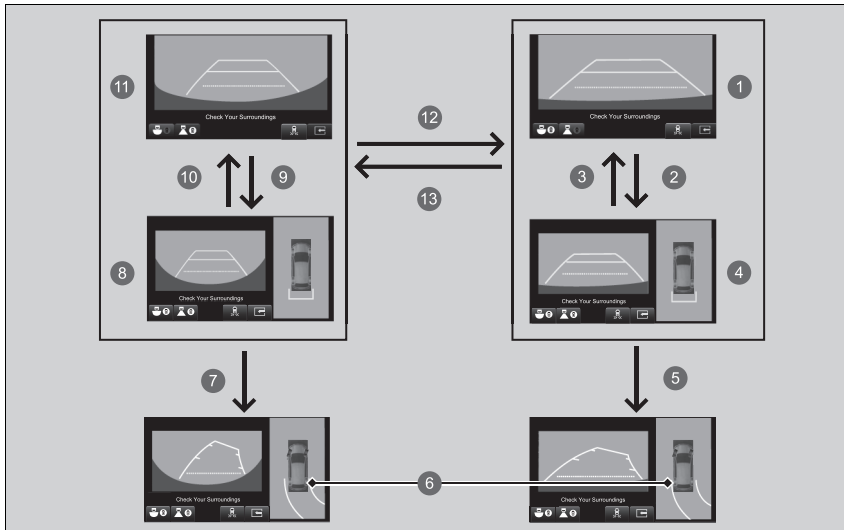
▶▶ **Customized Features** P. 321

If you turn the guidelines off, they remain off until you turn them back on.

## ■ Using the Multi-View Camera

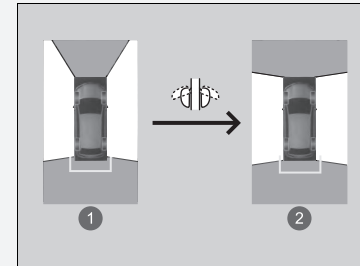
### ■ Checking for Obstacles at the Back of Your Vehicle

The display automatically changes to the rear view when the shift position is changed to **R**.















### ✘ Using the Multi-View Camera

The ground view can be displayed even with the door mirrors folded. However, the viewable angle and blind spot change.



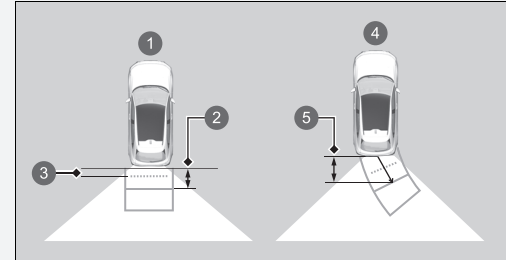
- ① Not folded
- ② Folded

Continued

- ① Rear Normal View
- ②  ① or 
- ③  ⑩ or 
- ④ Rear Normal View + Ground View
- ⑤ When the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees.
- ⑥ The projection lines appear 35 cm (14 inches) outside the vehicle body.
- ⑦ When the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees.
- ⑧ Rear Wide View + Ground View
- ⑨  ⑩ or 
- ⑩  ⑩ or 
- ⑪ Rear Wide View
- ⑫  ⑩ or  or **CAMERA** button
- ⑬  ⑩ or  or **CAMERA** button

▶▶ Checking for Obstacles at the Back of Your Vehicle

When changing the shift position from/to **[R]**, you may experience a delay in switching between the audio/information screen and a rear view image.

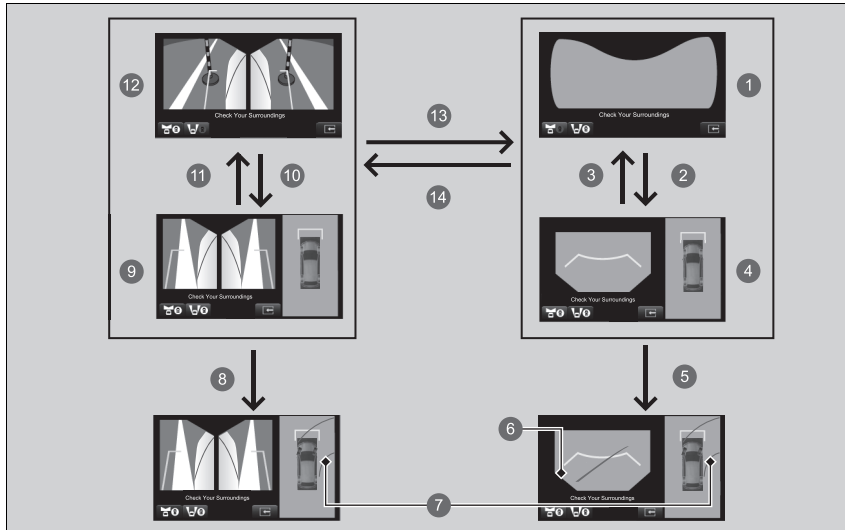


Approximate distances:

- ① The guidelines indicate
- ② 1.1 m (43 inches)
- ③ 60 cm (24 inches)
- ④ The projection lines indicate
- ⑤ 1.1 m (43 inches)

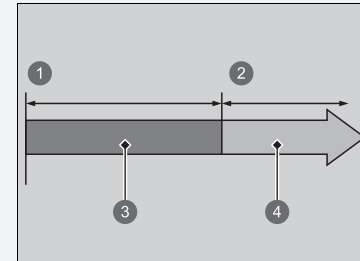
### ■ Checking for the Sides of Your Vehicle

You can display the front ground view screen using all the four cameras for the system. Pressing the **CAMERA** button when the vehicle speed is at below 20 km/h (12 mph) changes the image as follows.















### ☒ Checking for the Sides of Your Vehicle

While the image from the multi-view cameras is being displayed if the vehicle speed exceeds 25 km/h (16 mph), the front or side view on the screen automatically switches to the audio/information screen.



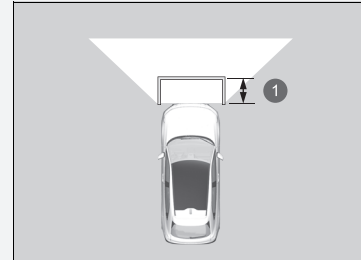
- 1 0 km/h (0 mph)
- 2 25 km/h (16 mph)
- 3 Camera Screen
- 4 Audio/Information Screen

Continued

- 1 Front Blind View
- 2  or 
- 3  or 
- 4 Front View + Ground View
- 5 When the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees.
- 6 Blind spots appear in black.
- 7 The projection lines appear 35 cm (14 inches) outside the vehicle body.
- 8 When the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees.
- 9 Left and Right Side View + Ground View
- 10  or 
- 11  or 
- 12 Left and Right Side View
- 13  or 
- 14  or  or **CAMERA** button

▶▶ Checking for the Sides of Your Vehicle

Approximate distance the reference line indicates

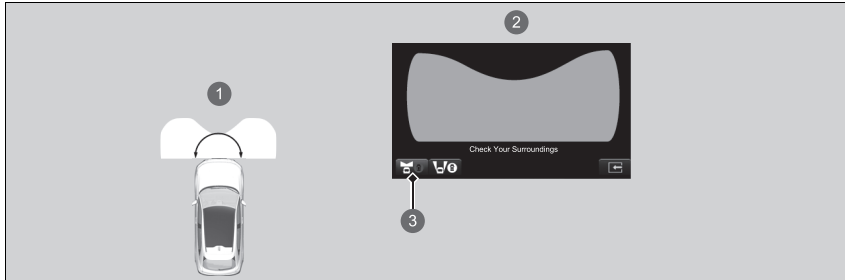


1 1.1 m (43 inches)



## ■ Checking from the front blind view at intersections

The front blind view screen is useful when you need to check for vehicles crossing from either direction at an intersection with poor visibility.



- ❶ The angle provided by the front blind view screen is 174 degrees.
- ❷ Front Blind View Screen
- ❸ When pressing the **CAMERA** button or select **Multi View Camera** and Front blind view icon.

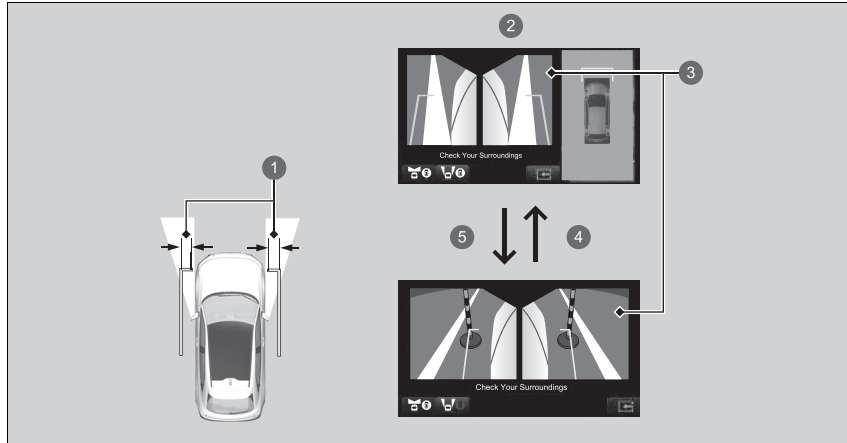
## ☒ Checking from the front blind view at intersections





The front blind view is a wide-angled view. The image will be largely distorted, and objects may appear closer or more distant than they actually are.

Continued

### ■ Checking the sides of your vehicle

The side view screens are convenient when you pull over at a curb or tollbooth, or slowly pass by oncoming vehicles on a narrow road.



- ① 40 cm (16 inches)
- ② Side View Screen
- ③ Side Views: The images from the side cameras
- ④  or 
- ⑤  or 

Approximate distance the projection lines indicate is 40 cm (16 inches) from the vehicle.

### ⌘ Checking the sides of your vehicle

When the door mirrors are folded, the side views cannot be displayed.

## Multi-View Camera Limitations

The system may not work properly under the following conditions.

Conditions		Solutions	
The projection line is not accurate.		Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
The images may not appear clearly when:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You activate the system in bad weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc.) or in the dark.</li> <li>Camera temperatures are high.</li> <li>A sudden change between light and dark such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.</li> <li>You drive into the sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk.)</li> <li>A camera lens is scratched.</li> </ul>	Do not use the multi-view camera system but rely only on visual confirmation until the conditions allow the system to work properly.	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A camera lens is covered with dirt, moisture, or debris.</li> <li>When water drops or insects get on the camera lens.</li> </ul>		Clean camera lenses with a soft cloth moisturised with water, mild detergent or glass cleaner.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The audio/information screen is dirty.</li> </ul>		Wipe off the screen using a soft dry cloth.
A camera angle is altered.	A camera or the area around the camera has been severely impacted.		
An error message is displayed while the multi-view camera system is in use.		Do not use the multi-view camera system and contact a dealer.	
The image does not come on the screen when you press the <b>CAMERA</b> button or select <b>Multi View Camera</b> on the audio/information screen and the vehicle is moving at 20 km/h (12 mph) or slower.			

## Honda Parking Pilot

Assists with parking and exit.

Cameras and sonar sensors will detect any parking spaces and set a route for parking in or pulling out of a space. The system will then help you park in or exit the space by adjusting your speed, moving the steering wheel, and changing the shift position.

### ⓘ Honda Parking Pilot\*

#### **WARNING**

**Honda Parking Pilot is not an automatic parking system.**

Like all assistance systems, Honda Parking Pilot has limitations.

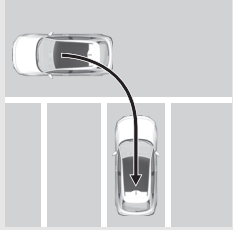
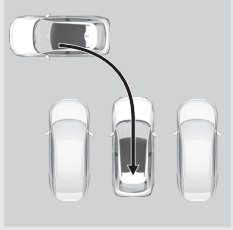
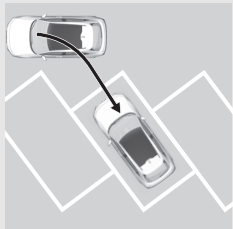
Overreliance on this system may result in a collision.

If you encounter the following situations while using the system, stop the car or cancel system operation, then manually avoid the situation.

- When you are about to collide with an obstacle, pedestrian, or another vehicle.
- When you encounter curbs, bumps, or wheel stoppers that should not be driven over.
- When you are about to enter a “No Entry” area.

Just like when parking manually, always visually and directly check your surroundings.

The system can be used in the following situations:

Parking patterns	Parking spaces with boundary lines	Parking spaces without boundary lines
Reverse parking		
Reverse angle parking*1		—

\*1: The parking space can be detected if there are three or more boundary lines and enough spaces to park two or more vehicles.

▶▶ Honda Parking Pilot\*

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use this system in unsuitable locations**

Do not use Honda Parking Pilot on slopes, irregularly shaped parking spaces, and other locations where it is not suited for use.

▶ **Unsuitable Locations for System Use**  
P. 521

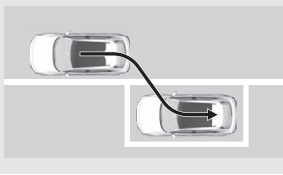
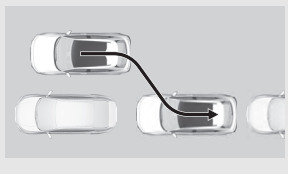
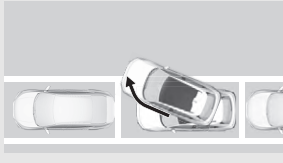
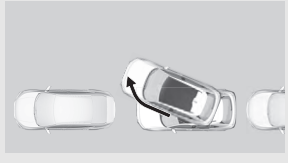
During Honda Parking Pilot operation, you may hear a sound when stopping/starting the vehicle. This is normal.

For the front/side/rear cameras, refer to the following page.

▶ **Camera Locations and Images** P. 506

For directions on the proper handling of the sonar sensors, refer to the following page.

▶ **Sonar Sensors** P. 543

Parking patterns	Parking spaces with boundary lines	Parking spaces without boundary lines
Parallel parking		
Pulling out of parallel parking* <sup>1</sup>		

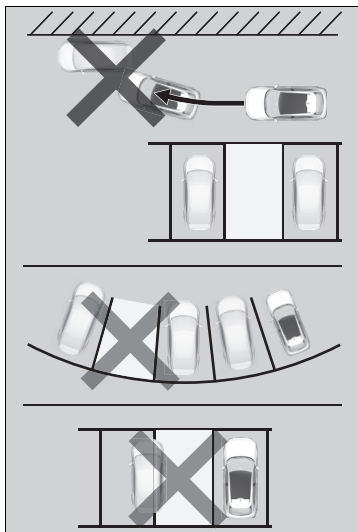
\*1: Limited to where there is a vehicles in front.

## ■ Unsuitable Locations for System Use

Honda Parking Pilot is not suitable for use in locations where the vehicle may become unable to move forward or backwards or slip easily or the parking space like the following.

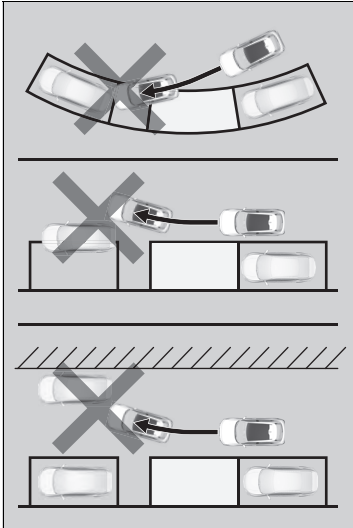
- There is a slope.
- The area is hilly or uneven.
- The area is unpaved and made of sand, gravel, grass, etc.
- The area is snow-covered.
- The area is slippery due to snow, ice, etc.
- The lane is narrow.
- There is an obstacle in front of the vehicle.
- The parking space is curved.
- Nearby vehicles are parked outside of the lines.

Reverse parking





Parallel parking



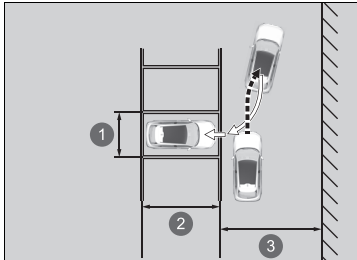
## ■ How to use Honda Parking Pilot

### ■ How to enter a parking space

You can use Honda Parking Pilot with parking spaces with boundary lines or similar guidelines, such as in the illustrations below.

You may not park properly if the parking spaces are too narrow or wide against the guidelines.

#### Reverse parking\*1



- ① About 2.6 m (8.5 ft.)
- ② Vehicle length + about 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) or more
- ③ Lane width 5.4 m (17.7 ft.) or more

\*1: If there are no boundary lines, the distance between the two other vehicles is about 3.2 m (10.5 ft.).

#### ▶ How to use Honda Parking Pilot

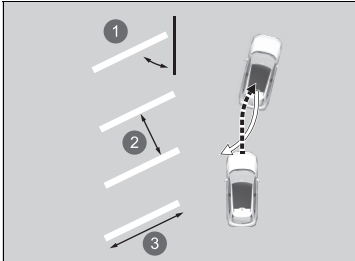
### ⚠ WARNING

**Be careful not to get your hands caught in the steering wheel.**

The steering wheel will turn automatically.

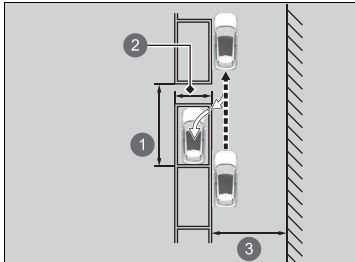
Audio volume cannot be adjusted while Honda Parking Pilot is in use.

## Reverse angle parking



- 1 About 60 degrees or 45 degrees
- 2 About 2.6 m (8.5 ft.)
- 3 Vehicle length + about 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) or more

### Parallel Parking\*1

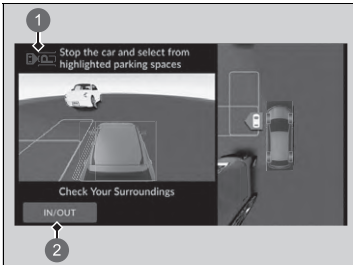


- ① About 6.1 m (20.0 ft.) or more
- ② White lines about 2.1 m (6.9 ft.)
- ③ About 4.5 m (14.8 ft.) or more


\*1: If there are no boundary lines, the distance between the other vehicles should be vehicle length + 1.5 m (4.9 ft.) or more.

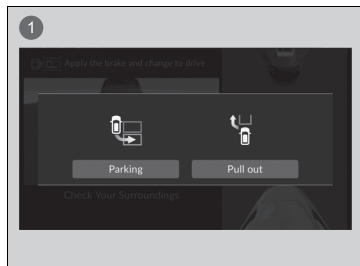


① Honda Parking Pilot Switch

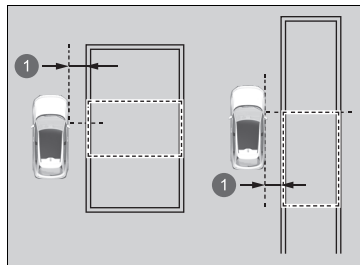


- ①  (grey)
- ② **IN/OUT** Icon

1. Press the Honda Parking Pilot switch and the Honda Parking Pilot mode will be displayed.
  - ▶  (grey) will be displayed in the upper left of the screen.
  - ▶ If the system is in pull out mode, you can choose parking mode by touching the **IN/OUT** icon.



1 Mode Change Display



1 About 1 m (3.3 ft.)

2. Move the vehicle close to the space where you want to park, and slowly advance to within 1 m (3.3 ft.) of the parking space until you are parallel to the parking space. Stop when the candidate parking space is outlined in green on the display.

- ▶ The system will beep when it detects a parking space.
- ▶ The detected parking space boundary (green) may be adjusted depending on the vehicle position or other condition.

▶▶ How to enter a parking space

Honda Parking Pilot cannot be used if the detected parking space is not shown.

Tips for detecting the target position

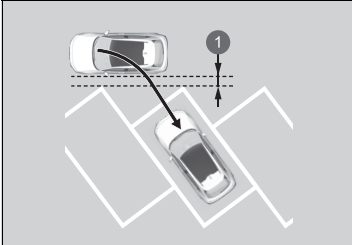
The parking space with boundary:

Stop so that the driver's seat is just beside the parking space.

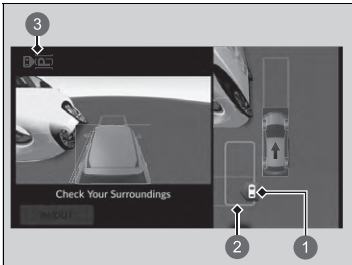
The parking space without boundary:

Stop so that the driver's seat is behind the parking space.

When you select the parking space directly confirm the space of the area.



① About 1 m (3.3 ft.)



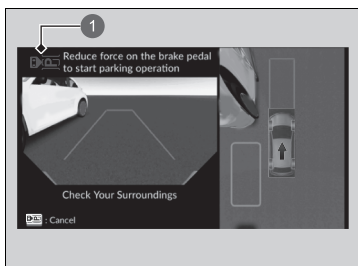
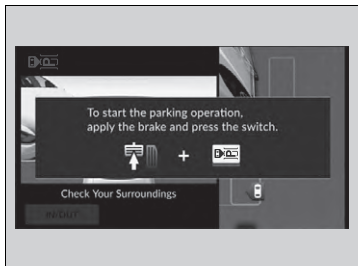
① Parking Space (green)

② Target Position (blue)

③ (grey)


3. While the vehicle is stopped, select the lines of any parking space (green) by touching the screen.

- ▶ When the selection screen for reverse parking or parallel parking displays, select the applicable mode.
- ▶ The selected lines of any parking space (green) will be the target position (blue).



①  (blue)

4. Press the Honda Parking Pilot switch while depressing the brake pedal.

- ▶ When in operation, the system will beep and  will blink in blue in the upper left of the display.
- ▶ The shift position will change depending on the direction in which the vehicle is moving.

5. Check your surroundings, the route on the screen, and stopping position, then release the brake pedal.

- ▶ The vehicle will start to move. Adjust your speed with the brake pedal if necessary.
- ▶ When you have finished parking, the shift position will change to **P** and the parking brake will automatically engage.
- ▶ **Parking operation is complete** message will display, then it will return to the previous screen.
- ▶ Adjust the parking location or position if needed.
- ▶ After parking, confirm the shift position is in **P**.

#### ▶▶ How to enter a parking space

After the system begins to operate, if there is an obstacle in your path, stop the vehicle with the brake pedal, press the Honda Parking Pilot switch and stop operation.

After the vehicle moved close to the target position, it may be possible that the vehicle move again to adjust the vehicle position.

Pay attention to the surroundings and stop the vehicle if needed.

You can stop the parking brake from automatically engaging after parking has finished.

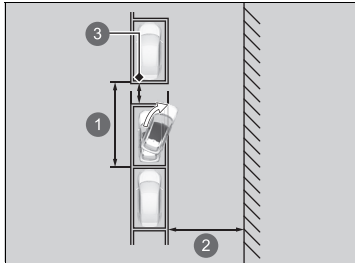
▶▶ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331



### ■ When pulling out from a parallel parking space

Honda Parking Pilot can be used if there is a vehicle in front of you at the following parking space.

Pull out



- ① About 6.1 m (20.0 ft.) or more
- ② About 4.5 m (14.8 ft.) or more
- ③ Distance of about 50 cm (20 inches) or more from other vehicles

▶▶ When pulling out from a parallel parking space

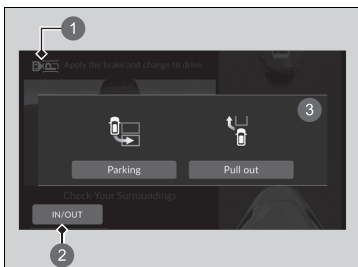
## ⚠ WARNING

**Be careful not to get your hands caught in the steering wheel.**


The steering wheel will turn automatically.



1 Honda Parking Pilot Switch



- 1  (grey)
- 2 **IN/OUT** Icon
- 3 Mode Change Display

1. Press the Honda Parking Pilot switch and the Honda Parking Pilot mode will be displayed.
  - ▶  (grey) will be displayed in the upper left of the screen.
  - ▶ If the system is in parking mode, you can choose pull out mode by touching the mode selector icon.
  - ▶ Depress the brake pedal following the directions on the screen and change the shift position to **R**.

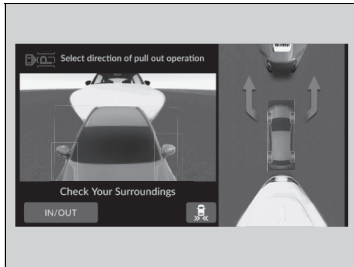
▶▶ When pulling out from a parallel parking space


The pull out function cannot be used if someone has double parked in front of the vehicle.

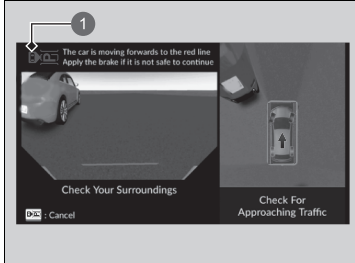
The pull out function cannot be used if the space between your vehicle and the vehicles in front of or behind you is extremely small or if there is a person or obstacle in between them.

Even if the parking sensor detects a person or obstacle while the pull out function is in use, it will continue to operate.

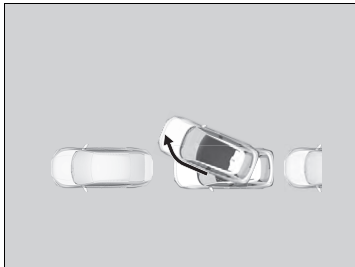
If a moving vehicle approaches from the rear, depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle.



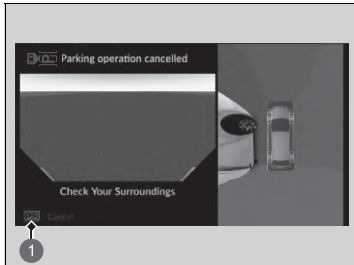
2. Tap and select the direction in which you will pull out on the screen with depressing the brake pedal.
3. Press the Honda Parking Pilot switch while depressing the brake pedal.
  - ▶ When in operation, the system will beep and  will blink in blue in the upper left of the display.
  - ▶ The shift position will change depending on the direction in which the vehicle is moving.
4. With the brake pedal depressed, release the parking brake by pressing the parking brake switch then release the brake pedal.
  - ▶ The vehicle will begin to move. Check your surroundings and adjust your speed using the brake pedal.
  - ▶ Pay attention to the situation in the direction in which you will pull out.
  - ▶ Once you have arrived at the point where pull out assistance will end, **Apply the brake to complete pull out operation** will display on the screen.



1  (blue)



5. Follow the instructions and depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ **Pull out operation is complete** will display in the upper left of the screen and assistance will end.
  - ▶ If the brake pedal is released, the vehicle will creep forward. Make sure the shift position and manually control the vehicle.



① Cancel Icon

### ■ Honda Parking Pilot shut off

In order to turn off Honda Parking Pilot after parking assistance has begun, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, then press the Honda Parking Pilot switch.

Even if you touch the cancel icon, Honda Parking Pilot will not turn off.

When operation is cancelled, a warning will sound and a message saying **Parking operation cancelled/Pull out operation cancelled** will be shown on the screen.

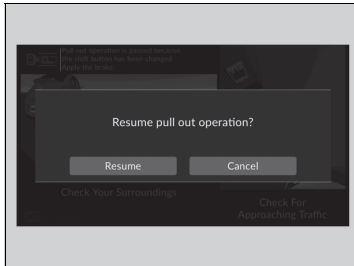
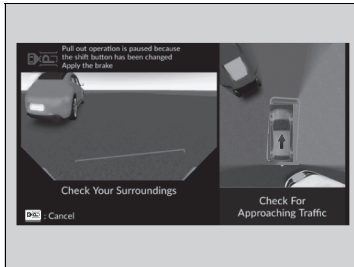
Depress the brake pedal.

- ▶ The system will return to the previous screen. Since the vehicle is no longer being controlled by the system, it will begin to creep if the brake pedal is released. Make sure the shift position and manually control the vehicle.

If Honda Parking Pilot is shut off, it is not possible to resume operation. You must start again from the beginning or park the vehicle manually.

### ■ Examples of shut off conditions

- The driver changed the shift position to **P**.
- The parking brake was engaged.
- About five minutes has passed since operation began.
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) was activated.
- VSA was set to OFF.
- Something unusual was detected.
- The Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) was activated.
- The vehicle speed is too high.
- The system cannot operate due to a slope.
- The vehicle cannot get over uneven ground.
- There is an obstacle in the parking space and the system has determined there is not enough space after starting.
- When switched more than a certain amount of times.
- When you deviate from the route or a route cannot be generated.



## ■ Pausing and restarting Honda Parking Pilot

If the system is paused, a beeper will sound, and a message will appear in the upper left of the screen.

Stop the vehicle by depressing the brake.

When assistance is able to be resumed, **Resume parking operation?/Resume pull out operation?** will be displayed on the screen. While the brake pedal is depressed, touch the **Resume** icon on the screen and assistance will continue. Release the brake pedal.

- ▶ The vehicle will begin to move. Check your surroundings and adjust your speed using the brake pedal.
- ▶ If you touch the cancel button while the brake pedal is depressed, assistance will end and **Parking operation cancelled/ Pull out operation cancelled.** will be displayed.  
Make sure the shift position and manually control the vehicle.
- ▶ If it is not possible to resume, **Resume** cannot be selected.

*Continued*

■ **Examples of pause conditions**



- The driver unfastened their seatbelt.
- A pedestrian or obstacle is detected.
- The driver depressed the accelerator.
- The driver turned the steering wheel.
- The driver changed the shift position to **D**, **R**, or **N**.
- A door on the vehicle was opened (including the tailgate).



## ■ Error Messages

If the following condition occurred while using the system, there may be a problem with the system.

Stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal, change the shift position to **P** once and manually operate the vehicle after making sure the shift position.

- The screen is not displayed.
-  does not blink.
- The system does not beep.
-  is amber and an error message is displayed on the screen.

## ■ Honda Parking Pilot Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the target position may be misaligned or not detected at all, or the vehicle may not be able to park.

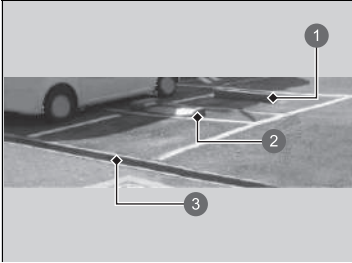
In addition, in the following situations that the route and turn-back position may not be generated properly, the system may detect obstacles or other things excessively and cancel the operation, or the vehicle may not be possible to stop before hitting an obstacle.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- The parking space boundary lines are faded or dirty.
- The parking space is outlined by rope, blocks, tile, etc.
- There is not much contrast between the pavement and parking space boundary lines.
- The parking space boundary lines are extremely thick, thin or short.
- Only one parking space boundary line can be seen.
- When the parking space is too wide or narrow.
- The parking area is too close or far from where you have stopped.

*Continued*

- The pavement of the parking area is not all one colour, or is uneven.
- There are shadows, paint, redrawn lines, etc. that look like parking space boundaries.
- The parking space boundaries are difficult to see, such as when parking at night or in dark indoor parking.
- Sunshine or lighting is reflected off of part or all of the pavement due to coating, etc.
- Sunlight, such as during sunrise or sunset, directly or indirectly enters the camera.
- It is difficult to see the boundary lines due to piled up snow, snow melting agents, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails vehicles, etc.) are parallel to the parking vehicle or parking space.
- There are holes, grooves, cliffs or protrusions.
- There are other vehicles with sonar sensors or other ultrasound-emitting objects close by.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- When similar shapes such as multiple window sashes are lined up in the building.
- Flaps, wheel stoppers, or other structures used in coin-operated parking lots.



- ① Wheel Stopper
- ② Coin Park Flap
- ③ Different Level

#### ■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is stopped at an angle to the parking space.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film of the camera lens.
- The sonar sensors are dirty (covered with snow, ice, mud, etc.).
- The sonar sensors or damaged to facing the wrong direction.
- The vehicle is too hot or cold.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).

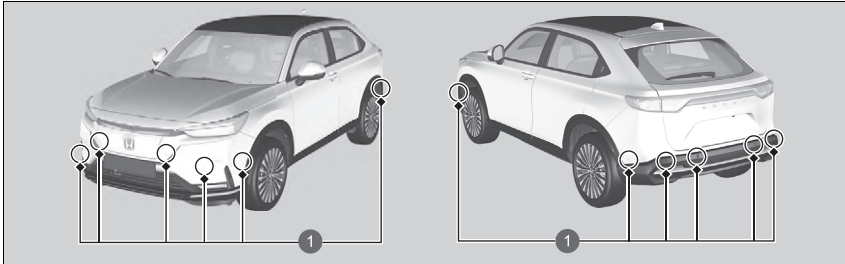
■ **Obstacle conditions**

- Obstacles that do not reflect sound waves well, such as people, snow, cloth, sponges, etc.
- Thin obstacles such as fences, chains, bicycles, sign posts, etc.
- Short or small obstacles.
- Curbs, parking curbs, level differences and other obstacles attached to the pavement.
- Obstacles immediately in front of the bumper.
- Obstacles such as walls that are not perpendicular to the ground.
- Moving objects or obstacles that suddenly enter the road.
- A sloped pillar or wall protruding from a high position.
- Specially-shaped obstacles, including other vehicles.
- The other vehicle is narrow.
- Ground clearance is high because the other vehicle is extremely low.
- Obstacles to the side of the vehicle.
- Obstacles, including other vehicles, too close or far from the vehicle.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply when approaching the obstacle at an angle.

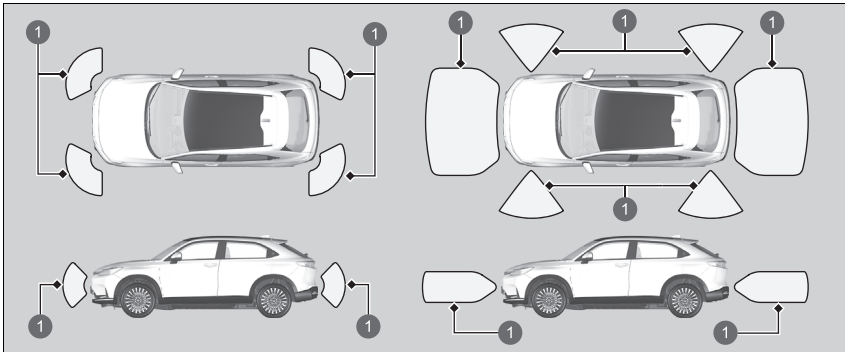
## Sonar Sensors

### ■ Location and range of sensors

The sonar sensors are situated in the front and rear bumpers, and the front grille.



1 Sonar Sensors



1 Sensor Range

While Honda Parking Pilot is in operation, the sensors located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers can also operate.

### ⊠ Sonar Sensors

For the sonar sensors to work properly, do not:

- Place stickers or other objects on or around the sensors.
- Hit the area around the sensors.
- Attempt to take apart any sensor.
- Put any accessories on or around the sensors.

Consult with a dealer if:

- A sensor has been subjected to shock.
- Work needs to be done to the area around a sensor.

In the following cases, the sonar sensors may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

- The front or rear bumper has made contact with a hill, parking block, curb, embankment, etc.
- The vehicle has been involved in frontal or rear collision.
- The vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle.

## Before Charging

Check the following items before you start charging your vehicle.

### Safety Checklist

- The 230 volt charger draws approximately 10 amps. Make sure to use a dedicated and properly grounded circuit that can supply 10 amps continuously.
  - ▶ Have an electrician inspect the outlet you are using to see if it meets these criteria.
- Make sure you plug the charging cable directly into the wall outlet dedicated to vehicle charging.
  - ▶ Do not use extension cords, adaptors, or multi-outlet plugs between the charging cable and the outlet.
- Make sure the charging cable is fully uncoiled before use.
- Make sure the control box, charging connector, and charging cable are free from any damage, including cracks or frays.
  - ▶ If you find any damage to the devices, contact an authorized dealer.
- Make sure the charging connector and inlet are clean.
  - ▶ If you find any contamination or foreign object in the connector or inlet, contact an authorized dealer.
- Make sure the charging cable is dry.
  - ▶ Check that there is no water in the immediate area, and that your hands are dry.

Note: Outlet needs to be in good shape. Worn or damaged outlet will not make good contact with the plug. Ensure that the plug is fully inserted and does not come out of the outlet after installation. A loose connection will cause excessive heat build up within the plug and damage it.

### Charging

#### **WARNING**

Using a 230 volt wall outlet that is rated less than 10 amps or one that is powering other devices can cause a fire, seriously injuring you or others.

When using the 230 volt charger, use a dedicated and properly grounded circuit rated 10 amps or more. Consult an electrician if you are not sure.

#### **WARNING**

Charging the High Voltage battery under the following conditions is a potential source of electric shock and fire, which can result in serious injury or death:

- Charging the battery during an electric storm.
- Using the charging cable near water or handling with wet hands.
- Using a charger, whose case is broken or cracked or whose cable is frayed or damaged.

Never charge the vehicle in any of the above situations.

## Charge the High Voltage Battery Using a AC or CCS2 DC Charger

There are two ways to charge the High Voltage battery; by using the AC 230 volt (10 amp) charger or CCS2 DC charger.

Charging with	Suggested charging time*1*2
CCS2 DC (100 kW, 200 amp)	63 minutes (80% charge)
AC 230 V (10 amp)	30 hours (full charge)

\*1: Charging time varies depending on conditions, such as the remaining battery level and the ambient temperature.

\*2: Full charge: 0% to 100% charge

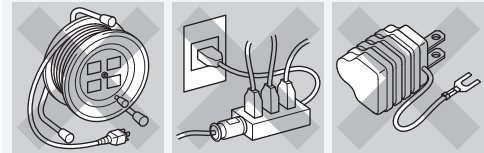
The suggested full charging time in this table indicates the hours it may likely take for the High Voltage battery to be fully charged from the moment the low charge indicator (amber) comes on with the ambient temperature at 25°C.

### ⚡ Charging

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper usage and handling of the 230 volt charger can cause a fire, seriously injuring you or others.

- Always insert the plug fully into a properly rated and grounded the wall outlet.
- Plug the charging cable directly to the wall outlet. Do not use extension cords or multi-plug adapters.
- Prevent the vehicle charging connector from becoming contaminated. Clean if necessary.



When the battery warming system is activated, the battery may take longer to charge.

When the 12-volt battery is disconnected, vehicle charging is not possible. After reconnecting the 12-volt battery, turn the power system on, then turn it off. Confirm that charging is possible.

➤ **Turning on the Power** P. 377

Continued

▶▶ Charging

**⚠ WARNING**

Using a charger that is damaged or modified can cause electrical shock and fire, which can result in serious injury or death.

Never disassemble or modify the charger. If the charger becomes damaged, stop using it and consult an authorized dealer.

**NOTICE**

Do not charge the vehicle with a vehicle cover on. It can cause a malfunction and damage the vehicle or charging components.

Inspect the charging cable plug and charging connector, as well as the vehicle's charge inlet, before use. If the plug or connector are dirty or otherwise contaminated, carefully clean them with a dry clean cloth before use. Do not wipe the metal part of the inlet and the charging connector. Also, if you are unable to clean the plug or connector, if the inlet is dirty, or if any are damaged or corroded, take the charging cable and vehicle to an authorized dealer for inspection and possible repair.



⌘ Charging

Before using a vehicle charging cable, inspect the cable for damage such as scratches, cracks, or tears. If you find any damage, do not use the charging cable; instead, take it to an authorized dealer for inspection.

If a blackout or other electrical interruption occurs during vehicle charging, the vehicle will automatically resume charging once power is restored.

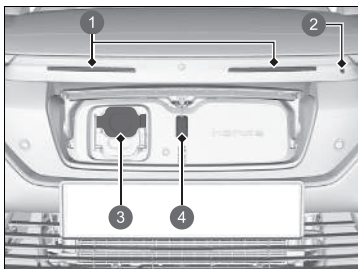
To avoid damage to the charger, take these precautions:

- Do not hit the charging connector components with a hard object or drop them on the ground.
- Do not pull, twist, tangle, drag or step on the charging cable.
- Do not use or store near any sources of heat.
- Do not expose to liquids or use harsh chemicals to clean.

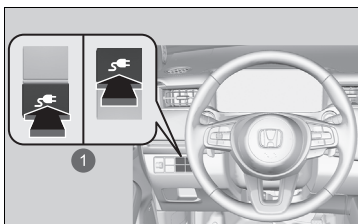
Even if the charging time exceeds 20 hours, the charging time shown on the driver information interface will be displayed as 20 hours.

⌘ **Charging Time Remaining** P. 155

### ■ How to Charge (AC 230 V)



- ① Charge Indicator
- ② Lid Open Button
- ③ AC 230 V Charge Inlet
- ④ Charge Lid Light



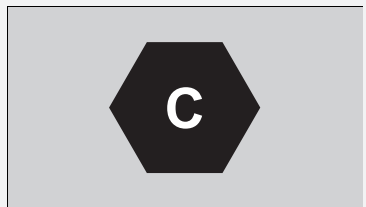
- ① Charge Lid Release Button

1. Put the transmission into **[P]** and turn the power system off.
  - ▶ Make sure the power system is off.
2. Press and hold the lid open button, or press and hold the charge lid release button.
  - ▶ The charge lid opens.
  - ▶ The charge lid light comes on for a few minutes.
  - ▶ The charge indicator (white) blinks.

### ▶▶ How to Charge (AC 230 V)

Charging equipment with the following identifier is compatible with AC charging.

▶ **Label Locations** P. 101



Lid open button control:

**When the doors are locked**

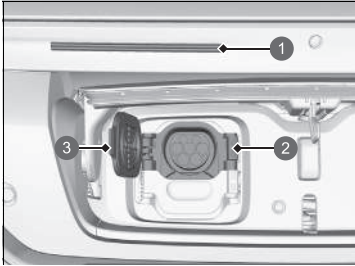
Press lid open button with keyless remote.

**When the doors are unlocked**

Press lid open button.

The 230 volt charger requires a properly grounded and dedicated circuit that is protected by a 10 amp or greater over-current protection device (circuit breaker). For more information consult an authorized dealer.

We recommend that a GFCI (ground-fault circuit interrupter) protected outlet be used to charge the vehicle. Follow the GFCI manufacturer's installation instructions, or consult an electrician if you are not sure about installation requirements.



- ❶ Charge Indicator
- ❷ Release Tab
- ❸ Inlet Cap

3. Press the cap release tab to open the inlet cap. Align and insert the charging connector into the vehicle's inlet until you hear a click.
- ▶ The charge indicator (white) stops blinking, and change to blue on when charging starts.

#### ⊠ How to Charge (AC 230 V)

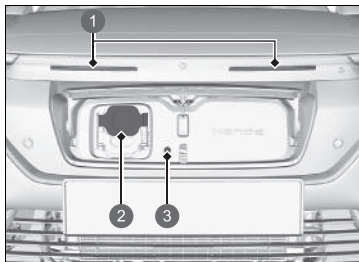
The High Voltage battery may not be charged even if the charging connector is properly connected to the vehicle's inlet when the charging timer is set.

- ▶ The High Voltage battery can be charged by disengaging and then reinserting the charging connector.

Be sure to follow the instructions and safety precautions provided with the AC charging equipment.

After the charging connector has been connected, slowly pull it outward to make sure it cannot be pulled out and is firmly in place.

- ▶ Do not connect the charging connector to the inlet at an angle.
- ▶ Do not move the charging connector up and down when connecting it.



- ① Charge Indicator
- ② Inlet Cap
- ③ Unlock Button

### ■ When charging is completed

Press the unlock button to disengage the charging connector from the inlet.

- ▶ Make sure to close the inlet cap before you close the charge lid.

The charge indicator (blue) stops sweep once charging is completed.

After about 15 seconds, the charge indicator goes off.

### ▣ How to Charge (AC 230 V)

The charge speed slows down towards the completion of the battery charging.

If you unplug the charging connector from the inlet, charging cancels automatically.

If the doors are locked, the charging connector cannot be disengaged unless you carry the keyless remote.

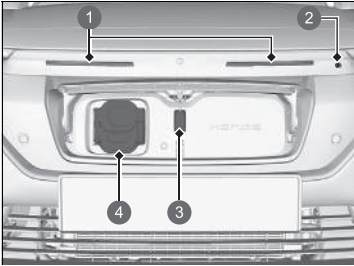
To disengage it, unlock the doors.

If you do not disengage it within 30 seconds of unlocking the doors, the charging connector will automatically relock.

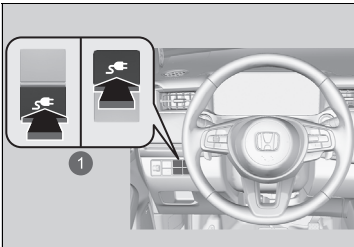
If the charging connector does not disengage, do not disengage it forcefully, and follow the procedures mentioned in the following page.

#### ▣ If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector P. 664

## How to Charge (DC)



- ① Charge Indicator
- ② Lid Open Button
- ③ Charge Lid Light
- ④ DC Charge Inlet



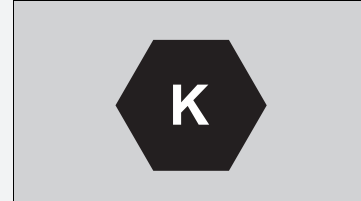
- ① Charge Lid Release Button

1. Put the transmission into **P** and turn the power system off.
  - ▶ Make sure the power system is off.
2. Press and hold the lid open button, or press and hold the charge lid release button.
  - ▶ The charge lid opens.
  - ▶ The charge lid light comes on for a few minutes.
  - ▶ The charge indicator (white) blinks.

## How to Charge (DC)

Charging equipment with the following identifier is compatible with DC charging.

▶ **Label Locations** P. 101



Do not use any charging cables longer than 30 m (98.4 ft.).

The charge speed slows down towards the completion of the battery charging.

Be sure to follow the instructions and safety precautions provided with the CCS2 DC charger equipment.

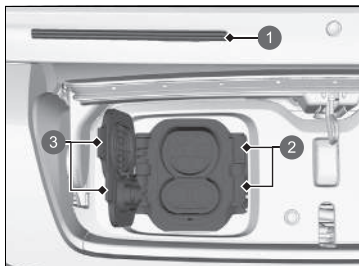
Lid open button control:

**When the doors are locked**

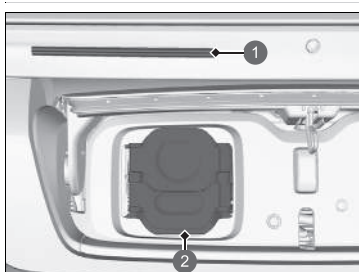
Press lid open button with keyless remote.

**When the doors are unlocked**

Press lid open button.



- ① Charge Indicator
- ② Release Tab
- ③ Inlet Cap



- ① Charge Indicator
- ② Inlet Cap

3. Press the cap release tab to open the inlet cap. Align and insert the charging connector into the vehicle's inlet until you hear a click.

- ▶ The charge indicator (white) stops blinking, and change to blue on when charging starts.

#### ■ When charging is completed

The charging connector to disengage it from the inlet.

If the charging connector has a release button, press it to release the charging connector from the inlet.

- ▶ Make sure to close the inlet cap before you close the charge lid.

The charge indicator (blue) stops sweep once charging is completed.

After about 15 seconds, the charge indicator goes off.

#### ▶▶ How to Charge (DC)

When you want to stop charging, follow the instructions for the use of the charger.

Once the charging is stopped, you can release the charging connector.

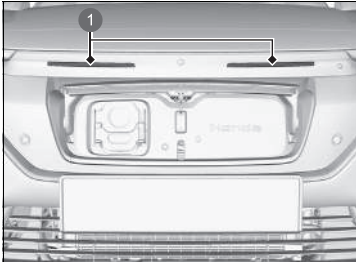
If the charging connector does not disengage, do not engage it forcefully, and follow the procedures mentioned in the following page.

#### ▶▶ If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector P. 664

The battery may not charge depending on the charging station outlet.

#### ▶▶ If the Quick Plug-in Charging System Warning Appears P. 654

## ■ Charge Indicator on the Vehicle Side



① Charge Indicator

Shows the High Voltage battery charging status.

Charge indicators status	Explanation
Blinks on the both sides (white)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The charge lid starts to open.</li> </ul>
Blinks on the side that the charging connector is plugged in	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The charger is ready to charge the battery.</li> <li>Charging is programmed to start using the timer.</li> </ul>
Sweep (blue)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The battery is being charged.</li> </ul>
Stays on (blue)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Charging is complete.</li> </ul>
Blinks (blue)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The battery has been fully charged and systems such as the battery heating system have been activated.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ The charge indicator goes off after few seconds.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Blinks (amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is a problem with the charging system.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Charging does not start.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☒ <b>If the Quick Plug-in Charging System Warning Appears</b> P. 654</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Stays on (amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The charging connector not inserted correctly.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ When connecting the charging cable to the vehicle, insert the connector until it hits the back so that it does not tilt.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Stays on (white)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The charger's stop button is pressed.</li> <li>Charging is stopped by the charger timer.</li> <li>The charging timer has been set.</li> </ul>

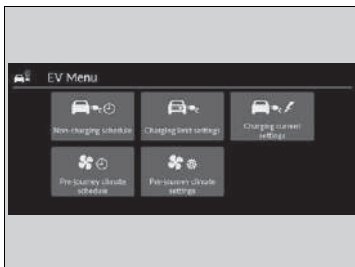
## Using a Timer

You can set the timer for the High Voltage battery charge using the audio/information screen.

The vehicle begins charging except at the scheduled time when the charging connector is connected to the vehicle.

➤ **Non-charging Schedule Setting** P. 313

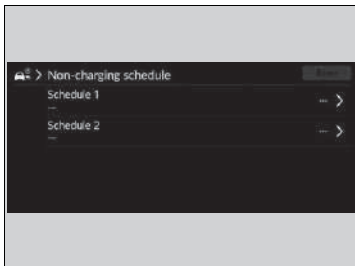
### Settings on the Audio/Information Screen



1. Select **EV Menu**, then select **Non-charging schedule**.

▶ The **Non-charging schedule** can not be set when you do not have the GPS after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Move to an appropriate communication environment and set the schedule again.

2. Select **Schedule 1** or **Schedule 2**.



### Using a Timer

The charging wait timer schedule is only applicable to AC 230 V charging.

Even during the time set via **Non-charging schedule** setting, the battery may not be sufficiently charged when any of the following systems are activated.

- Battery Warming System
- Pre air conditioner
- Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning

### Settings on the Audio/Information Screen

**ON/OFF:** Selects whether the schedule is enabled or disabled.

**Time Period:** The battery will be charged except at the time during you have designated not to start.

**Day:** The battery will be charged except at the time during you have designated not to start.

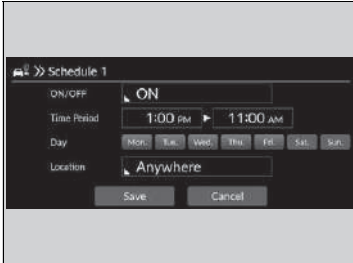
**Location:** Select **Home** or **Anywhere**.

▶ **Home** may be selected when your vehicle is charged at near your home.

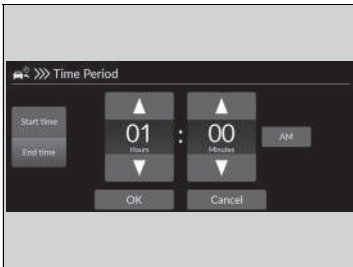
▶ **Anywhere** will be selected when the location of your home is not registered.

If the Home Location is not set in the navigation system, it will default to **Anywhere**.





3. Select **ON** or **OFF**, then select settings for all items in order starting from the top.
4. Select **Save**.



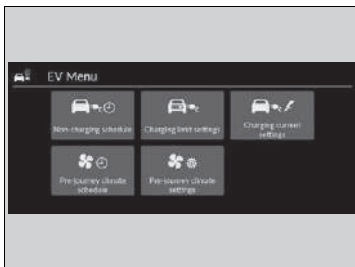
## Maximum Charge Setting

You can use the audio/information screen to change the maximum charge limit of the High Voltage battery when using AC 230 V or DC charging equipment.

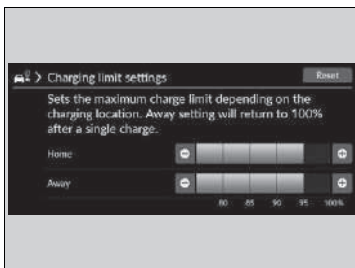
➤ **Charging Limit Settings** P. 314

If the charge station is located up on a hill, you do not need to fully charge the vehicle at the station. This is because additional electrical energy can be stored in the High Voltage battery as the motor acts an electric generator while going down a hill.

### Settings on the Audio/Information Screen



1. Select **EV Menu**.
2. Select **Charging limit settings**.



3. Select **Home** or **Away**.
  - ▶ You can set the maximum charge setting based on the location of the vehicle when charging.
    - Home:** The location set as home
    - Away:** Any other location
4. Choose your preferred charge amount.

### Settings on the Audio/Information Screen

To charge with the charge amount set in **Home**, you need to register the home position with navigation system.

If the Home Location is not set in the navigation system, you can customize **Away** setting only.

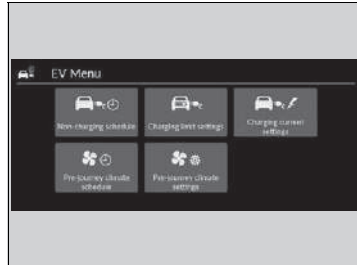
## Charging Current Settings

You can use the audio/information screen to change the charging current of the high voltage battery when using AC 230 V charging equipment.

▶ You can prevent the breaker from tripping when charging at home or while you are out.

📖 **Charging Current Settings** P. 314

### ■ Settings on the Audio/Information Screen



1. Select **EV Menu**.
2. Select **Charging current settings**.

### ☒ Settings on the Audio/Information Screen

The charging current settings is only applicable to AC 230 V charging.

Continued

**3. Select Home or Away.**

▶ You can set the charge current setting based on where you are charging your vehicle.

**4. Choose your preferred charge current.**

Audio/Information Screen	Charging with	Suggested Charging Time*1*2
	<b>High</b>	Incase of 10 amp 29 hours (full charge)
	Between <b>High</b> and <b>Low</b>	Incase of 8 amp 36 hours (full charge)
	<b>Low</b>	Incase of 6 amp 48 hours (full charge)

\*1: Charging time varies depending on conditions, such as the remaining battery level and the ambient temperature.

\*2: Full charge: 0% to 100% charge

**1 Home:** The location set as home

▶ You need to register the home position with navigation system.

**2 Away:** Any other location

**3 High:** Maximum value (Up to 10 amp)

**4 Between High and Low:** Intermediate value between maximum value and 6 amp. (For example, if maximum value is 10 amp and minimum value is 6 amp, the intermediate value would be 8 amp.)

**5 Low:** 6 amp

## High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery level may get low. Keeping your vehicle's battery level low can shorten the battery life, negatively affecting the vehicle's range. To maintain the battery while the vehicle is not in use, recharge the battery at least once every three months.

The High Voltage battery life can also be affected by ambient temperature. In particular, when it is cold outside, the vehicle's driving range can be reduced, and a longer battery charging time is required. In addition, parking in extremely hot or cold environments can accelerate battery drain.

To help extend the lifespan of the battery, it is recommended that you fully charge the battery each time prior to driving.

### ■ Battery Warming System

Designed to prevent the temperature of the battery from dropping when outside temperatures drop, thereby maintaining starting and running efficiency.

When outside temperatures are low, the battery warming system will use the power from the charging equipment to maintain the temperature of the battery until the next time the vehicle is driven.

#### ⌘ High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery drains over time, and under some conditions, drains faster. When the battery life is shortened, this changes the vehicle's driving distance.

#### ⌘ Battery Warming System

If the temperature of the High Voltage battery drops to  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  or below, the power system will not start. Wait for the High Voltage battery to warm up or move the vehicle to a warmer location. Note using the battery heating system will not help in this case. We recommend that you plug in your vehicle when you are parking or storing your vehicle in cold temperatures.

## Improving Energy Economy

Achieving energy economy is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, driving habits, and vehicle condition.

Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated energy economy of this vehicle.

### Maintenance and Energy Economy

You can optimize your energy economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle.

Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the driver information interface.

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance .....	562
Safety When Performing Maintenance .....	563
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service .....	564

<b>Service Reminder System*</b> .....	566
---------------------------------------	-----

<b>Maintenance Schedule*</b> .....	571
------------------------------------	-----

## Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet .....	574
Opening the Bonnet .....	575
Motor Room Cover .....	577
Cooling System .....	581

Transmission Fluid.....	584
Climate Control Coolant .....	585
Brake Fluid.....	588
Refilling Window Washer Fluid.....	589

<b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> .....	590
------------------------------------	-----

<b>Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades</b> .....	593
--	-----

## Checking and Maintaining Tyres

Checking Tyres .....	598
Wear Indicators.....	599
Tyre Service Life .....	599
Tyre and Wheel Replacement.....	600

Tyre Rotation .....	601
Snow Traction Devices .....	602
<b>12-Volt Battery</b> .....	604

## Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Remote Battery .....	609
------------------------------------	-----

<b>Climate Control System Maintenance</b> .....	611
---	-----

## Cleaning

Interior Care .....	614
Exterior Care.....	617

<b>Accessories and Modifications</b> .....	621
--	-----

\* Not available on all models

## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the service information available for your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule**\* P. 571

### Types of Inspection and Maintenance

#### ■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when charging.

#### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  - **Brake Fluid** P. 588
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 598
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 590
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 593



## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage system related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  - ▶ Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.

#### ⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/service information available for your vehicle.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## ■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the motor compartment.
  - ▶ Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - ▶ Make sure to let the power system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed to do so.  
Keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
- Do not touch the high-voltage battery and wiring (orange).

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

---

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

### ▶▶ Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

---

#### **NOTICE**

Do not press the motor room cover forcibly. This may damage the motor room cover and component parts.

## About Your Maintenance Service

If the service reminder system is available in your vehicle, you are informed by the driver information interface when your vehicle's maintenance services are due. Refer to the service information available for your vehicle for an explanation of the service item codes that appear on the display.

➤ **Service Reminder System\*** P. 566

If the service reminder system is not available, follow the maintenance schedules in the service book\* that came with your vehicle.

If your vehicle is without the service book\*, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule\*** P. 571

### ▶▶ About Your Maintenance Service

#### Models with service reminder system

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer for how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

\* Not available on all models

# Service Reminder System\*



Provides information of which service items are to be performed. Service items are represented by a code and icon. The system tells you when to take your vehicle to a dealer by days remaining.

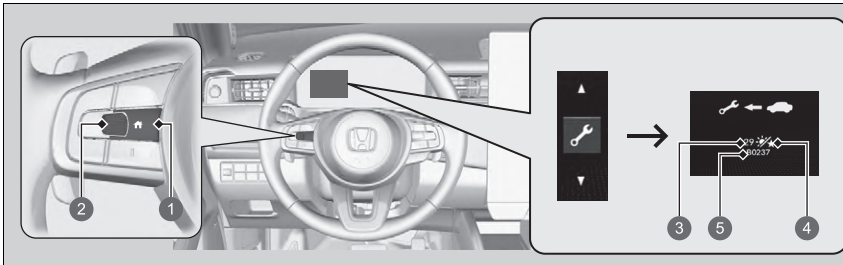
When the next maintenance service timing is near, coming or passed, a warning icon will also appear on the driver information interface every time you set the power mode to ON.


## Service Reminder System\*

You can choose to have a corresponding warning message displayed with the warning icon on the driver information interface.

## ■ Displaying the Service Reminder Information

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until  is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the service reminder information screen. The maintenance item(s) appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.






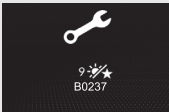
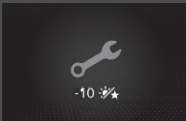
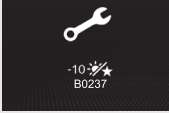
- ①  (home) Button
- ② Left Selector Wheel
- ③ Remaining Days
- ④ Day Icon
- ⑤ Maintenance Item Code(s)

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the service reminder information.

## ☒ Displaying the Service Reminder Information

Based on engine operating conditions and engine oil conditions, the system calculates the remaining days before the next service is to be performed.


## Warning Icons and Service Reminder Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Icon	Service Reminder Information	Explanation	Information
<b>Service Due Soon</b> 		One or more of the service items are required in less than 30 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.	The remaining days will be counted down per day.
<b>Service Due Now</b> 		One or more of the service items are required in less than 10 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.	Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.
<b>Service Over Due</b> 		The indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.	Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder system.

## ■ Service Reminder Items

Service items displayed on the driver information interface are in code and icon. For an explanation of the service reminder codes and icons, refer to the service information available for your vehicle.

## ■ Availability of the Service Reminder System

Even if the service reminder information appears on the driver information interface while pressing the  (home) button, this system is not available in some countries. Refer to the service information available for your vehicle, or ask a dealer if you can use the service reminder system.



## ▣ Availability of the Service Reminder System

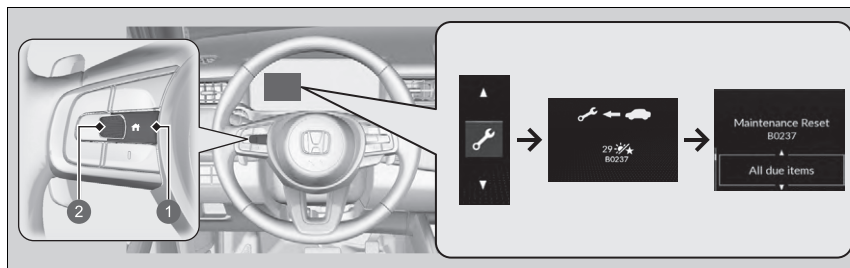
If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer on how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

*Continued*

## ■ Resetting the Display

Reset the service reminder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until  is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the service reminder information screen.
5. Press and hold the left selector wheel until the reset mode is displayed.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to select the item you want to reset (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
  - ▶ To reset all items simultaneously, select **All Due Items**.
7. Press the left selector wheel to reset the selected item.
8. Repeat from step 5 for other items you wish to reset.




- 1  (home) Button
- 2 Left Selector Wheel

## ▶▶ Resetting the Display

### NOTICE

Failure to reset the service reminder information after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

You can also reset the service reminder system information display using the audio/information screen.

 **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**  
P. 331

The dealer will reset the service reminder information display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the service reminder information display yourself.



## Maintenance Schedule\*

Maintenance information for your vehicle can be found with the service information for your vehicle (if available). If service information is not available, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

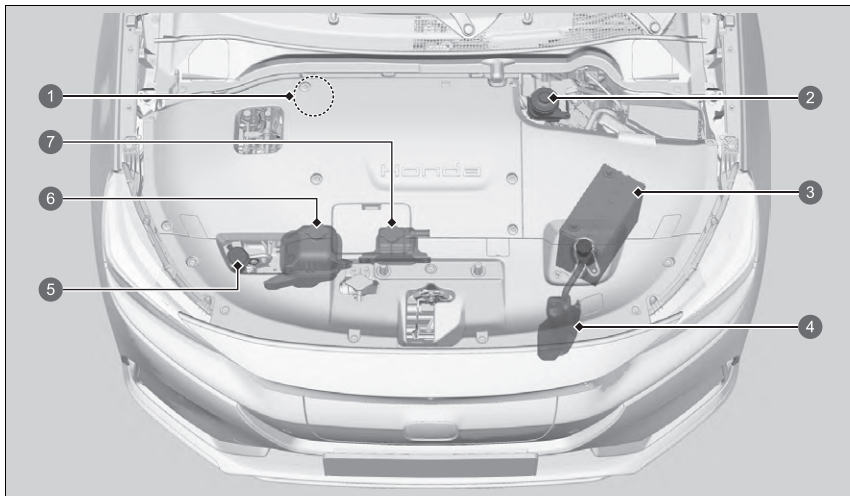
Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200	220	240
	miles X 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0	137.5	150
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144
Replace transmission fluid	Every 160,000 km (99,000 miles)												
Replace dust and pollen filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year												
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years												
Check expiration date for temporary tyre repair kit bottle	Every 1 year												
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)												
Inspect IPU	At 240,000 km (149,000 miles) or 15 years, thereafter every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 2 years												
<b>Visually inspect the following items:</b>													
Driveshaft boots	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year												
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots													
Suspension components													
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VA)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
IPU (including IPU guard and cover)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

## Maintenance Record (on vehicles without separate service record)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

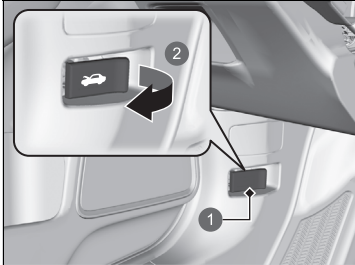
Km (Miles) or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
<b>20,000 km</b> 12,500 Mi. (or 12 Mo.)		
<b>40,000 km</b> 25,000 Mi. (or 24 Mo.)		
<b>60,000 km</b> 37,500 Mi. (or 36 Mo.)		
<b>80,000 km</b> 50,000 Mi. (or 48 Mo.)		
<b>100,000 km</b> 62,500 Mi. (or 60 Mo.)		
<b>120,000 km</b> 75,000 Mi. (or 72 Mo.)		
<b>140,000 km</b> 87,500 Mi. (or 84 Mo.)		
<b>160,000 km</b> 100,000 Mi. (or 96 Mo.)		
<b>180,000 km</b> 112,500 Mi. (or 108 Mo.)		
<b>200,000 km</b> 125,000 Mi. (or 120 Mo.)		
<b>220,000 km</b> 137,500 Mi. (or 132 Mo.)		
<b>240,000 km</b> 150,000 Mi. (or 144 Mo.)		

## Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

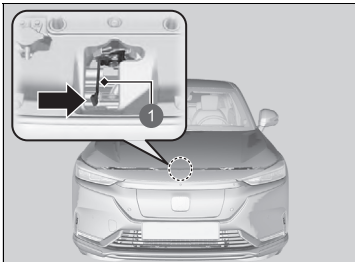


- ① Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Right-hand drive type)
- ② Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Left-hand drive type)
- ③ 12-Volt Battery
- ④ PCU Coolant Reserve Tank
- ⑤ Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
- ⑥ IPU Coolant Reserve Tank
- ⑦ Climate Control Coolant Reserve Tank

## Opening the Bonnet



- ① Bonnet Release Handle
- ② Pull



- ① Lever

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
  - The bonnet will pop up slightly.

3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

### Opening the Bonnet

#### NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

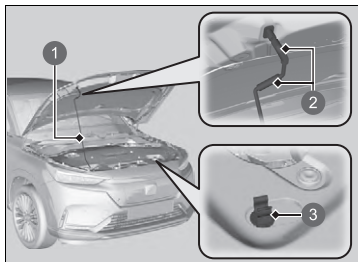
#### NOTICE

Do not press the motor room cover forcibly. This may damage the motor room cover and component parts.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

The radiator fans and the climate control system will not operate when the bonnet is open and the climate control system is turned on with the remote transmitter.



- ① Support Rod
- ② Grip
- ③ Clamp

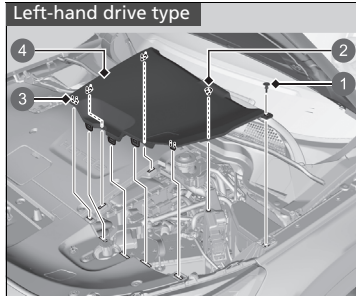
4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm (12 inches) and let the bonnet close.

## Motor Room Cover

The component parts in the motor room are protected by a cover. You may need to remove the cover when you perform certain maintenance work.

### Remove the Left Side Cover

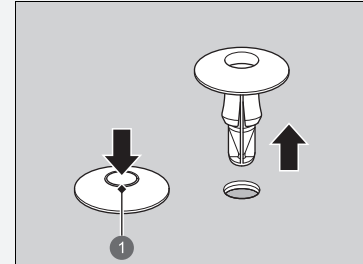


- 1 Clip
- 2 Pin
- 3 Tab
- 4 Motor Room Cover

1. Remove the holding clip.
2. Pull up the motor room cover.

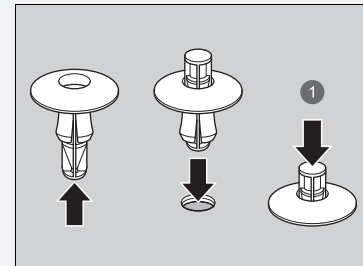
### Motor Room Cover

Press down the centre pin until it clicks to unlock it.



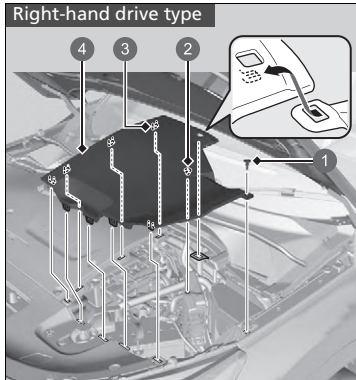
- 1 Centre Pin

Push the centre pin back to lock the clip. Then, insert the clip into the hole and press on the centre pin until it is flat.



- 1 Push until the pin is flat.

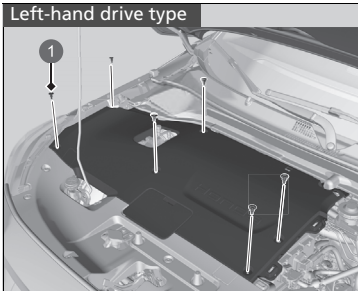
Continued



- ① Clip
- ② Pin
- ③ Tab
- ④ Motor Room Cover

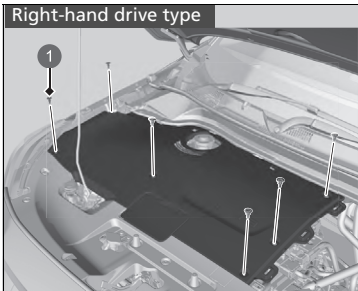


## Remove the Right Side Cover

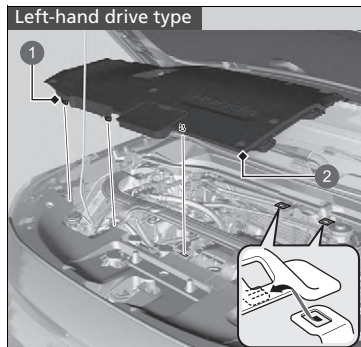


1. Remove the motor room cover (left side).  
    ➤ **Remove the Left Side Cover** P. 577
2. Remove the holding clips.

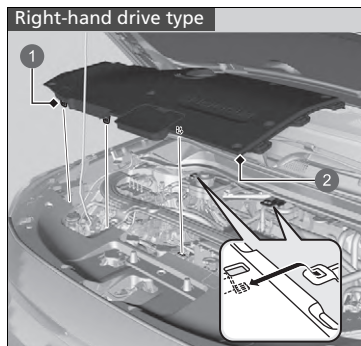
1 Clip



1 Clip



- 1 Tab
- 2 Motor Room Cover



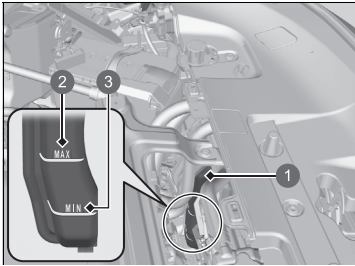
- 1 Tab
- 2 Motor Room Cover

3. Pull up the motor room cover.

## Cooling System

Coolant is used to reduce the temperature of the high voltage battery, power control unit and related parts. When checking the coolant level, make sure to follow the procedures listed below. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

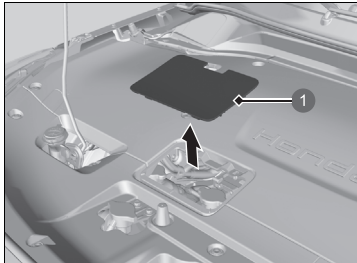
### ■ Checking the PCU Coolant Level



- ① Reserve Tank
- ② **MAX**
- ③ **MIN**

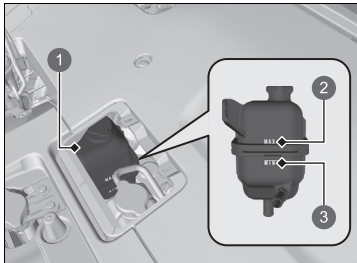
1. Remove the both motor room cover.  
 ► **Motor Room Cover** P. 577
2. Check the fluid level in the tank.
3. If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.  
 ► Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

## ■ Checking the IPU Coolant Level



1. Remove the cover.

1 Cover



2. Check the fluid level in the tank.

3. If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.

► Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

1 Reserve Tank

2 **MAX**

3 **MIN**

## ■ IPU Coolant Reserve Tank Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 49 kPa.

## ■ Radiator Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

## Transmission Fluid

### Specified fluid: Honda BEVF-Type1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary. Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule**\* P. 571

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid by yourself.

### ▶▶ Transmission Fluid

#### NOTICE

**Do not mix Honda BEVF-Type1 with other transmission fluids.**

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda BEVF-Type1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda BEVF-Type1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

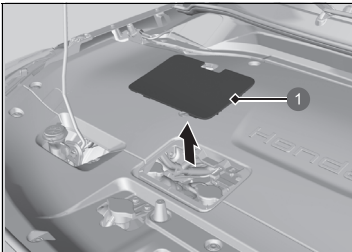
## Climate Control Coolant

### Specified coolant: Honda Genuine Coolant

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the coolant level every time you charge the High Voltage battery. Check the reserve tank. Add the climate control coolant accordingly.

### Checking the Coolant



1 Cover

1. Remove the cover.

### Climate Control Coolant

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Removing the reserve tank cap while the climate control system is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the climate control system cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

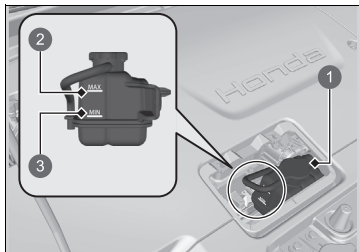
#### **NOTICE**

If temperatures consistently below  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda genuine coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended.

Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda genuine coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's coolant system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the climate control system.



- 1 Reserve Tank
- 2 **MAX**
- 3 **MIN**

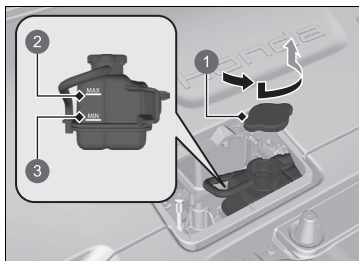
2. **Make sure the climate control system is cool.**

3. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.

► If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

4. Inspect the system for leaks.

## ■ Adding the Coolant



- 1 Reserve Tank Cap
- 2 **MAX**
- 3 **MIN**

1. **Make sure the climate control system is cool.**

2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8th turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the reserve tank.

3. Push down and turn the reserve tank cap anticlockwise to remove it.

4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

## ►► Adding the Coolant

### **NOTICE**

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the motor compartment.



## ■ Climate Control Coolant Reserve Tank Cap



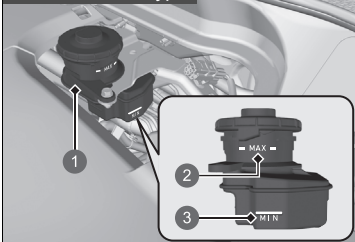
- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 49 kPa.

## Brake Fluid

**Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4**

### ■ Checking the Brake Fluid

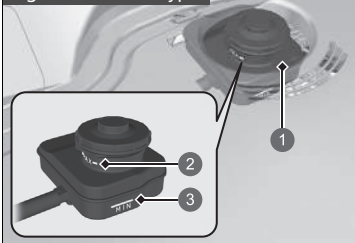
Left-hand drive type



- 1 Reserve Tank
- 2 **MAX**
- 3 **MIN**

The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Right-hand drive type



- 1 Reserve Tank
- 2 **MAX**
- 3 **MIN**

### » Brake Fluid

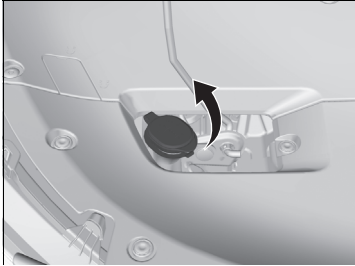
#### NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

### ► Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use motor antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

## Headlights

---

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Front Fog Lights

---

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Position/Daytime Running Lights

---

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Front Turn Signal Lights

---

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

---

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Brake Lights, Taillights, and Rear Turn Signal Lights

---

Brake lights, taillights, and rear turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

### Headlights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

## Taillights, Back-Up Light, and Rear Fog Light

---

Taillights, back-up light, and rear fog light are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Rear Licence Plate Light

---

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## High-Mount Brake Light

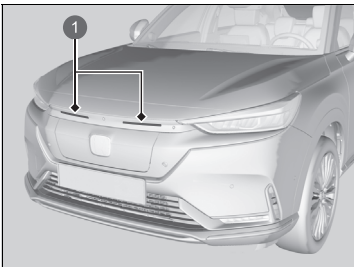
---

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Charge Lights

---

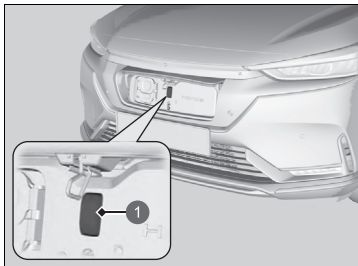
Charge lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



① Charge Lights

## Charge Lid Light

Charge lid light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

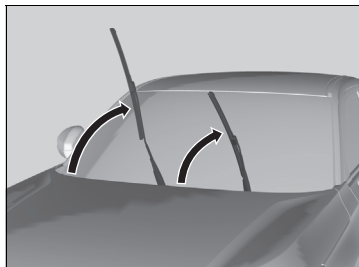


① Charge Lid Light

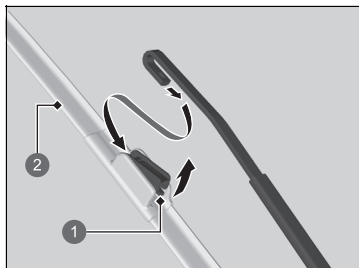
## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.



2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

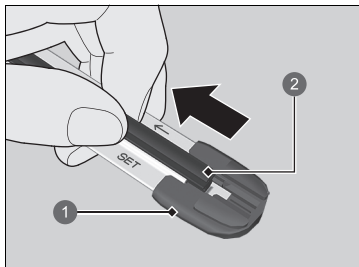
- 1 Tab
- 2 Holder

### Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

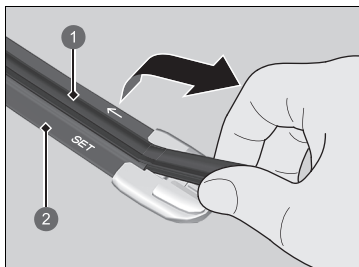
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.

*Continued*



- 1 End Cap at the bottom
- 2 Blade

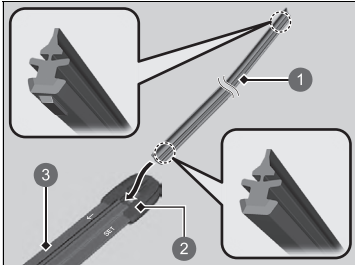
3. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.



- 1 Blade
- 2 Holder

4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.

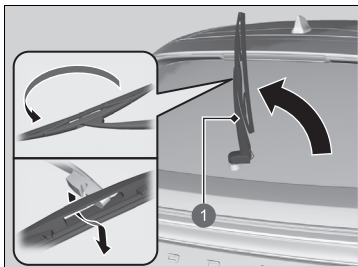




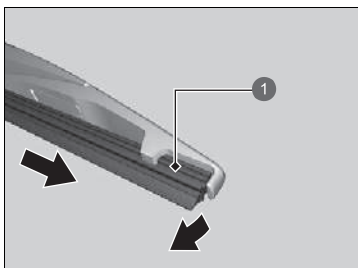
- ❶ Blade
- ❷ Cap
- ❸ Holder

5. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
6. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
7. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
8. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

## Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1 Wiper Arm



1 Blade

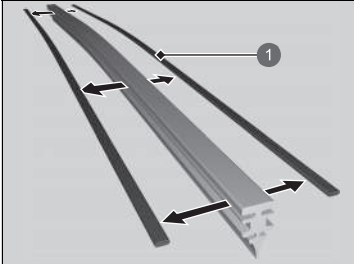
1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

### ▶▶ Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

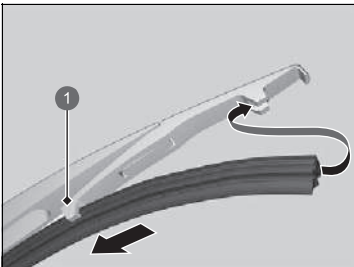
#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm, as it may damage the rear window.



1 Retainer

4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.



1 Holder

5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.  
▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

## Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and energy economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  - **Wear Indicators** P. 599
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

### 🔍 Checking Tyres

## ⚠️ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

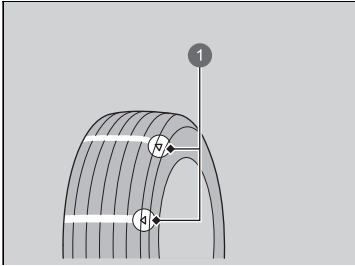
If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

➤ **Deflation Warning System Calibration**  
P. 400

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

## Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm (about 1/16 inch) shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

**Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

- ① Example of a Wear Indicator mark

## Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

## Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

### ▶ Tyre and Wheel Replacement

#### **WARNING**

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

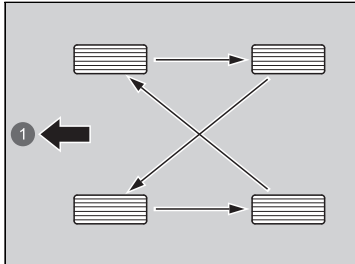
#### **NOTICE**

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminium wheels. Use only Honda wheel weights for balancing.

## Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

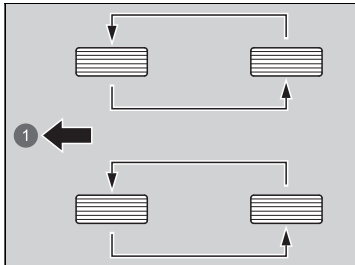
### ■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

① Front

### ■ Tyres with rotation marks

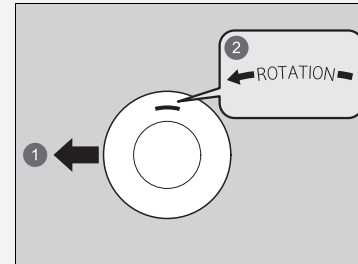


Rotate the tyres as shown here.

① Front

### ☒ Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



① Front

② Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

☒ **Deflation Warning System Calibration**

P. 400

## Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
<b>225/50R18 95V</b>	<b>RUD Compact GRIP 4716966</b>

\*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

### ► Snow Traction Devices

## WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

### NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

According to the EU legislation for tyres, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the designed max. speed of vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of winter tyre. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If you have any question, consult a dealer.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.



#### ☒ Snow Traction Devices

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

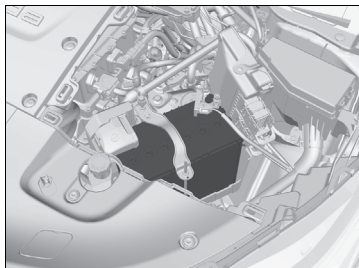
Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

## Checking the 12-Volt Battery

The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.



To access the battery terminals:

1. Remove the motor room cover (left side).

➔ **Motor Room Cover** P. 577

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.  
➔ **Reactivating the audio system** P. 253

### Right-hand drive type

- The immobilizer system needs to be reset.  
➔ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 117

### All models

- The vehicle cannot be charged. After reconnecting the battery, turn the power system on, then turn it off.

Confirm that charging is possible.

- ➔ **Turning on the Power** P. 377
- ➔ **Charging** P. 544

### 12-Volt Battery

## ⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

## ⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

## Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

### 12-Volt Battery

#### Emergency Procedures

**Eyes:** Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

**Skin:** Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

**Swallowing:** Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

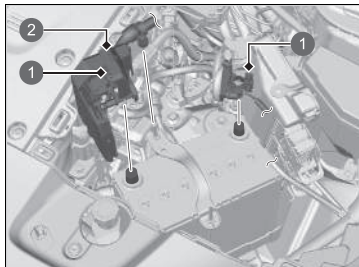
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

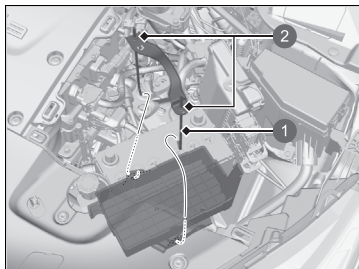
When you remove and replace the 12-volt battery, always follow the maintenance safety and the warnings for when checking the battery to prevent potential hazards.

➤ **Maintenance Safety** P. 563

➤ **Checking the 12-Volt Battery** P. 604



- 1 Nut
- 2 Cover



- 1 Stay
- 2 Nut

1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the motor room cover (left side).

➤ **Motor Room Cover** P. 577

3. Loosen the nut on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative (-) terminal.
4. Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the nut on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive (+) terminal.
5. Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
6. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.

### ▶▶ Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

#### NOTICE

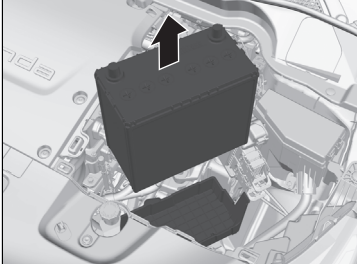
An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.

Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.



7. Take out the battery carefully.

## Battery Label



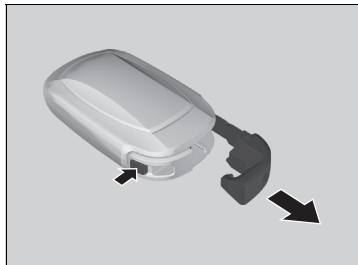
### ▶▶ Battery Label

#### **DANGER**

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

## Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



**Battery type: CR2032**

1. Remove the built-in key.
  - ▶ Wrap the key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
  - ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with key grip.



### Replacing the Remote Battery

#### **⚠ ⚠ WARNING**

##### **CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD**

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

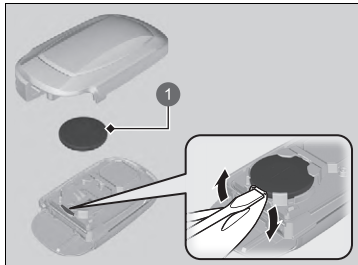
**CAUTION:** Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

**CAUTION:** Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

**CAUTION:** Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

**CAUTION:** Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

*Continued*



1 Battery

3. Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
  - ▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

#### ▶▶ Replacing the Remote Battery

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery\*.

#### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.



## Air Conditioning

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

### Air Conditioning

#### NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:

➤ **Safety Labels** P. 101

➤ **Specifications** P. 670



⚠ : Caution

🔥 : Flammable Refrigerant

🔧 : Requires a qualified technician to service

⚙ : Air Conditioning System

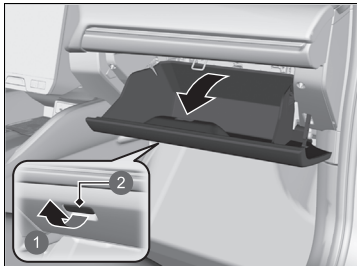
## Dust and Pollen Filter

### ■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule\*** P. 571

### ■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



- 1 Pull
- 2 Handle

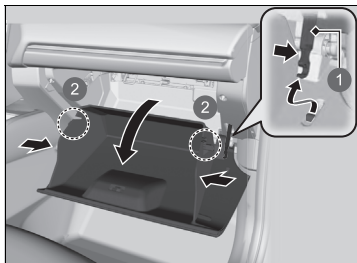
1. Open the glove box.

### » Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

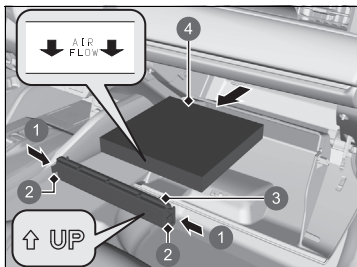
The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.



2. Push the stopper on the passenger's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

- 1 Stopper
- 2 Tab



5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
6. Remove the filter from the case.
7. Install a new filter in the case.
  - Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

- 1 Push
- 2 Tab
- 3 Cover
- 4 Dust and Pollen Filter

## Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

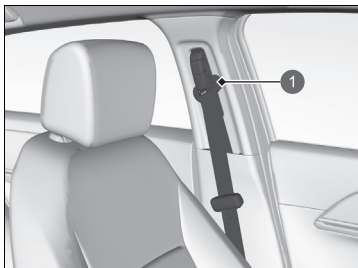
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



1 Loop

### Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

### ▣ Cleaning the Window

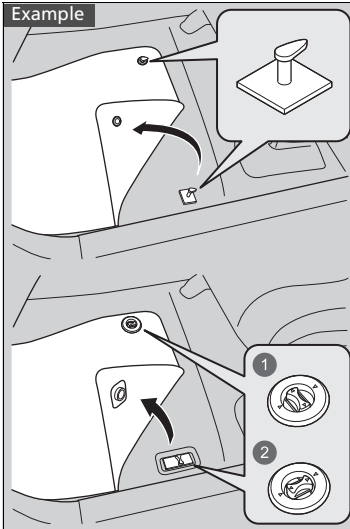
Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

### ▣ Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

## ■ Floor Mats



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

**Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.**

- 1 Unlock
- 2 Lock

Continued

## ■ Charging Cable Plug and Charging Connector

When the charging cable plug and charging connector gets dirty, wipe the dirt with a soft cloth.

## ■ Maintaining Genuine Leather

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

## ▣ Maintaining Genuine Leather

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather, resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats, resulting in discolouration or stains.

## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

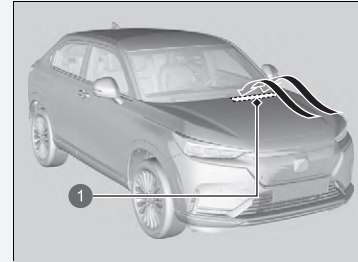
- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

### ■ Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

#### ⌘ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



① Air Intake Vents

#### ⌘ Using an Automated Car Wash

When using an automated car wash that pulls the vehicle through with a conveyor, make sure the transmission is in **[N]** position.

▶ **If you want to keep the transmission in **[N]** position** P. 386

## ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray water under the bonnet where the electric motor and other high voltage system components are located. It could cause a malfunction.
- Do not spray water directly at the charging port.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get coolant or battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

### ▶▶ Applying Wax

#### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

### ▶▶ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.



## ■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

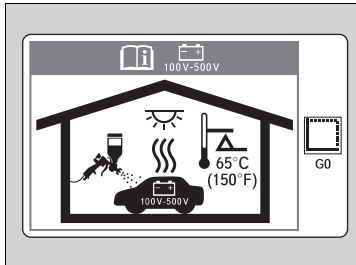
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## ■ Hydrophilic Mirror

Your vehicle's door mirror surface is coated with hydrophilic film. Follow the next steps when the mirrors become less hydrophilic.

1. Rinse the door mirrors with water and remove dirt.
2. Wipe the mirrors with a clean damp cloth.
  - ▶ If you cannot remove dirt, use the genuine window cleaner, or neutral household detergent, and rinse with enough water.
3. Expose the mirrors to the sun for five to nine hours.

## ■ Painting the Vehicle



High temperature may damage the high voltage battery used to power the electric motor.

When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65°C.

## ▶▶ Hydrophilic Mirror

### NOTICE

To keep the hydrophilicity of the mirrors,

- Do not apply wax or water repellent agent on the mirror surface.
- Do not wipe the mirrors with a gritty cloth or abrasive cleanser.

## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda genuine accessories designated for your vehicle over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Items other than Honda genuine accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  - **Fuses** P. 656
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

### Accessories and Modifications

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

## Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high-voltage power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high-voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high-voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's power system and have been designed, engineered, and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high-voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered, and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

### ►► Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Some Honda genuine accessories are supplied with an exclusive owner's manual for the operation and care detail of the product. If an accessory owner's manual is provided to you, please refer to it for full detail.

If any Honda genuine accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

# Handling the Unexpected

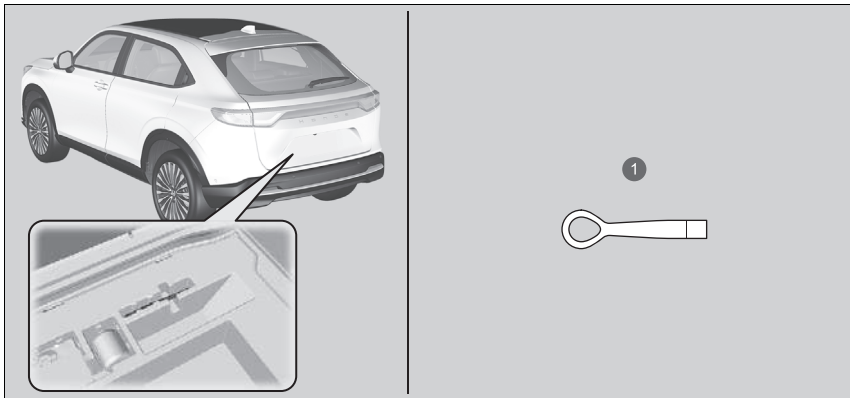
This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

<b>Tools</b> .....	624
<b>If a Tyre Goes Flat</b> .....	625
<b>Handling of the Jack</b> .....	638
<b>Power System Won't Start</b>	
Checking the Procedure .....	639
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ....	641
Emergency Power System On .....	642
Emergency Power System Off .....	643
<b>If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead</b> .....	644
<b>Overheating</b> .....	647
<b>Indicator Coming On/Blinking</b>	
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On .....	648

If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears .....	648
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks .....	649
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On .....	650
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On ....	651
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks ...	652
If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message...	653

If the Quick Plug-in Charging System Warning Appears .....	654
If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears .....	655
<b>Fuses</b>	
Fuse Locations .....	656
Inspecting and Changing Fuses .....	661
<b>Emergency Towing</b> .....	662
<b>If You Cannot Open the Charge Lid</b> .....	663
<b>If You Cannot Disengage the Charging     Connector</b> .....	664
<b>If You Cannot Open the Tailgate</b> ....	666

## Types of Tools



① Detachable Towing Hook

### Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

## Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

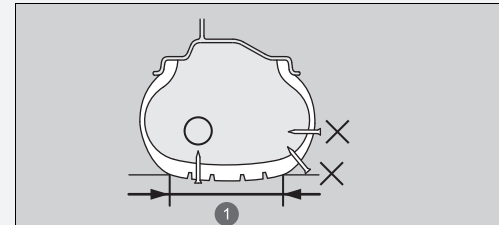
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

### Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



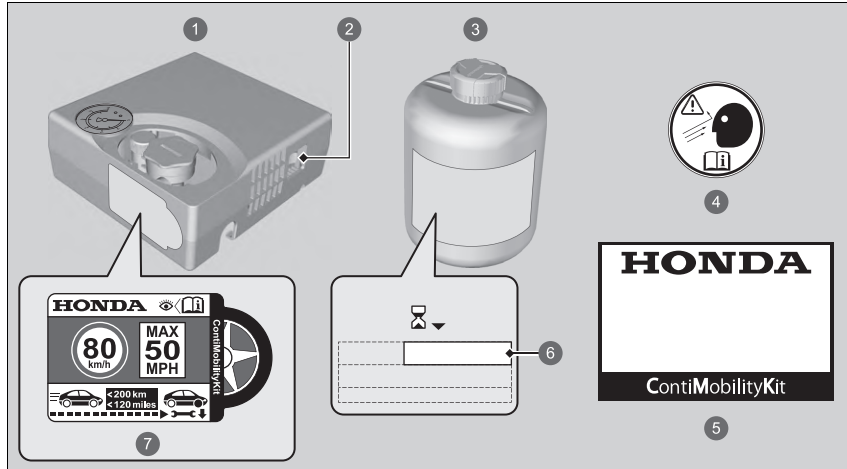
When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	Yes
Larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	No

#### 1 Contact Area

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

## ■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre



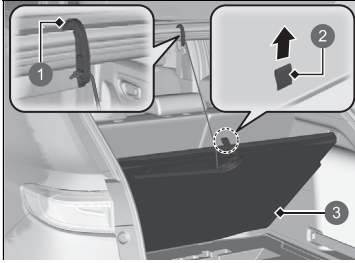
- ① Air Compressor
- ② Air Compressor Switch
- ③ Sealant Bottle
- ④ Wheel Label
- ⑤ Handling Manual
- ⑥ Expiration Date
- ⑦ Speed Restriction Label

## ▣ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

Speed restriction labels are applied to the side of the temporary tyre repair kit.

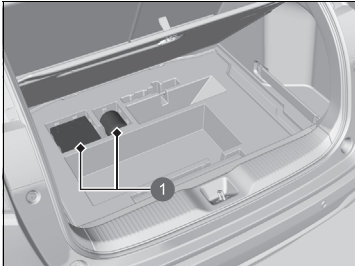
When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.





1. Open the tailgate.
2. Pull the strap and open the luggage area floor lid.
3. Take out the hook, and hang it onto the tailgate opening.

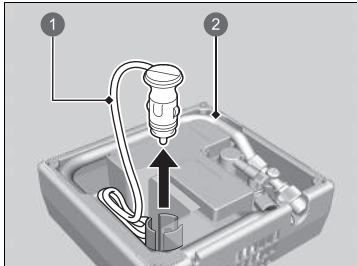
- ① Hook
- ② Strap
- ③ Floor Lid



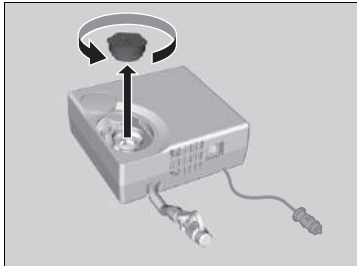
4. Take the kit out of the tool box.
5. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the flat tyre away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

- ① Tyre Repair Kit

## ■ Injecting Sealant and Air



- ① Plug Cord
- ② Air Compressor Hose



1. Take the air compressor hose and plug cord out of the back of the air compressor.

2. Remove the cap from the air compressor.

## ▶▶ Injecting Sealant and Air

### ⚠ WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

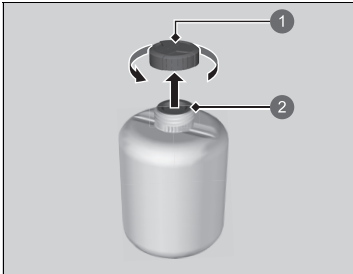
Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.



**3.** Shake the bottle well.



**4.** Remove the bottle cap.

▶ Do not remove the sealed cover.

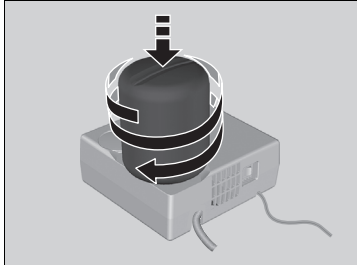
- ① Bottle Cap
- ② Not Removed

▶▶ Injecting Sealant and Air

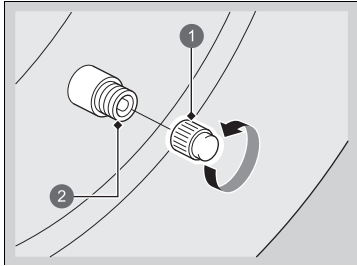
Do not remove the empty bottle after injecting the sealant.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement of sealant bottle and proper disposal of the empty bottle.

Continued

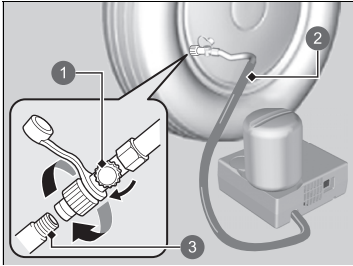


5. Screw the sealed bottle onto the air compressor.
  - ▶ Screw the bottle tightly so that it does not become loose.

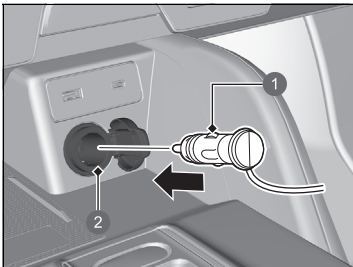


6. Unscrew the valve cap.

- 1 Valve Cap
- 2 Valve



- ❶ Air Valve
- ❷ Air Compressor Hose
- ❸ Valve



- ❶ Plug
- ❷ Accessory Power Socket

7. Screw the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve.

- ▶ Make sure the air valve is closed and the air compressor is turned off.

8. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.

- ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

🔧 **Accessory Power Socket** P. 232

9. Turn on the vehicle's power system.

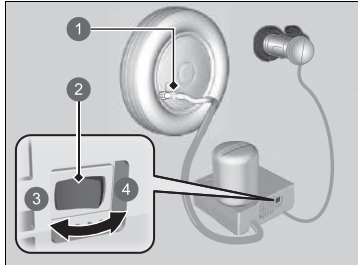
#### 🔧 Injecting Sealant and Air

Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.

You hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.

If the specified air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

If you want to measure the air pressure using a gauge, turn the air compressor off first.



- ① Air Valve
- ② Switch
- ③ OFF
- ④ ON

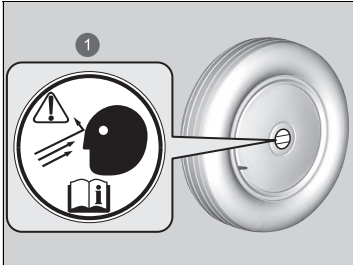
10. Turn the air compressor on and inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
  - ▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
  - ▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.
11. After the air pressure reaches the specified pressure, turn off the compressor.
  - ▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
  - ▶ If overinflated, release the air by turning the air valve. Be careful not to spill any sealant.
12. Unplug the plug from the accessory power socket.
13. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Install the hose cap.
  - ▶ Be careful not to spill any sealant when the hose is disconnected. Wipe away any spills.

#### ▶▶ Injecting Sealant and Air

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:

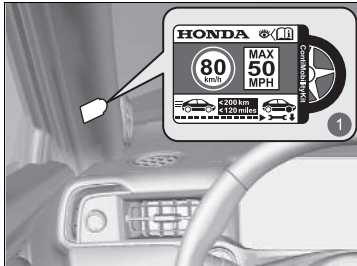
- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged. Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.



1 Wheel Label

14. Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
  - ▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.
15. Store the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.
  - ▶ Do not remove the sealant bottle from the air compressor.

## ■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



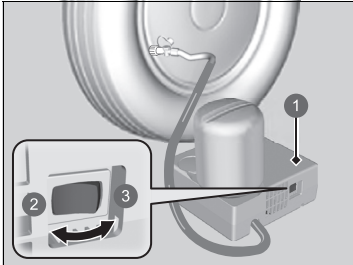
① Speed Restriction Label

1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes or 3 to 10 kilometres (2 to 6 miles).
  - ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

## ▶▶ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.





- ❶ Air Compressor
- ❷ OFF
- ❸ ON

4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
  - ▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.
5. If the air pressure is
  - Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
    - **Emergency Towing** P. 662
  - Specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more: Continue driving until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
  - Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.): Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
    - **Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre**  
P. 636

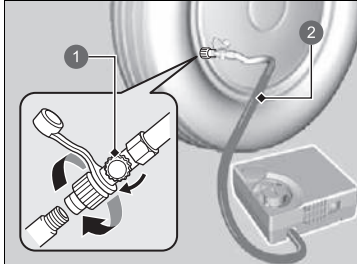
And repeat steps 2 to 4 until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

  - ▶ The distance to the nearest service station has to be within about 200 kilometres (120 miles).
6. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

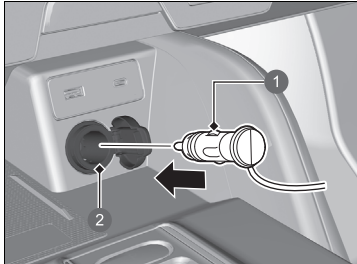
*Continued*

## ■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.

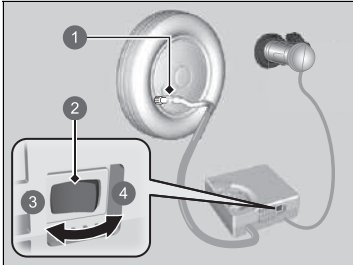


- 1 Air Valve
- 2 Hose



- 1 Plug
- 2 Accessory Power Socket

1. Take the air compressor out of the luggage area.
  - **Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre** P. 626
2. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the valve cap.
4. Attach the hose onto the tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.
  - Make sure the air valve is closed.
5. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
  - Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
  - **Accessory Power Socket** P. 232
6. Turn on the vehicle's power system.



- ❶ Air Valve
- ❷ Switch
- ❸ OFF
- ❹ ON

7. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
  - ▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
  - ▶ If you have started the power system, leave it running while injecting air.
8. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
9. Turn off the air compressor.
  - ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
  - ▶ If overinflated, turn the air valve to deflate.
10. Turn the vehicle's power system off, then unplug the air compressor from the accessory power socket.
11. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Store the air compressor in the luggage area.

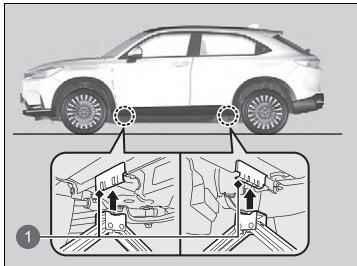
#### ⓘ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

##### NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

# Handling of the Jack






Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.  
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



1 Jacking Points

## Checking the Procedure

If the power system won't start, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.	The  <b>Remove charging connector</b> appears.	Removing a charge connector. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY, then to ON.
	The  <b>Low charge. Power reduced.</b> appears.	Charge the High Voltage battery. ➤ <b>Charging</b> P. 544
	The  <b>Temperature too low for vehicle to operate</b> appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location.</li> <li>Contact a dealer if necessary.</li> </ul>
	The  <b>To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote</b> appears.	➤ <b>If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 641
	The transmission system indicator blinks and the  <b>Transmission system problem. Apply parking brake when parked.</b> appears.	➤ <b>If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message</b> P. 653
Check the fuses.		Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➤ <b>Inspecting and Changing Fuses</b> P. 661
Check the power system starting procedure.		Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again. ➤ <b>Turning on the Power</b> P. 377
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in <b>P</b> .	Change the shift position to <b>P</b> .
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Immobilizer System</b> P. 182</li> <li>➤ <b>Immobilizer System Indicator</b> P. 117</li> </ul>

If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

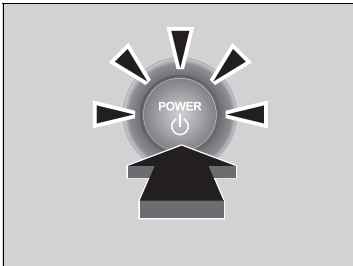
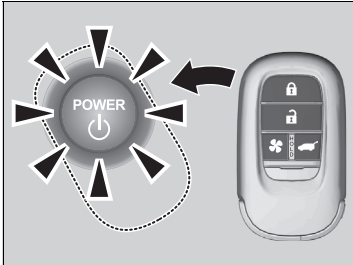
➤ **If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 644


Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily turn the power system on using the emergency starting procedure.

➤ **Emergency Power System On** P. 642

## If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the  **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, and the  (Ready) indicator does not come on, turn on the power system as follows:



1. Press the **POWER** button.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds and the **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
2. Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds, and the **POWER** button stays on for about 10 seconds.
3. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button while the **POWER** button is on.
  - ▶ The  (Ready) indicator comes on.
  - ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

## Emergency Power System On

---

If the power system cannot be turned on using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to turn it on using the emergency starting procedure below.

Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Check that the transmission is in **[P]**, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **POWER** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to turn the power system on using the above procedure.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.



## Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the power system disables the power assist the power system provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The transmission automatically changes to **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, the power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

### ⓘ Emergency Power System Off

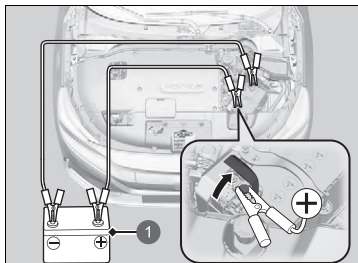
#### NOTICE

Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.

If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



1 Booster Battery

1. Remove the motor room cover.  
▶ **Motor Room Cover** P. 577
2. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's 12-volt battery positive ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.  
▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.  
▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
5. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

### Jump Starting Procedure

#### **WARNING**

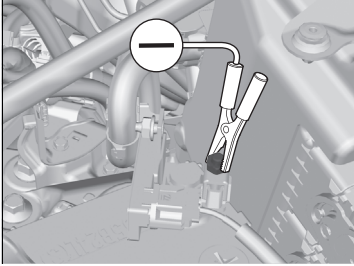
A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

#### **NOTICE**

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the power system vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



6. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the nut of the 12-volt battery sensor  $\ominus$  terminal as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
7. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.
8. Attempt to start your vehicle's power system. If it isn't turn on, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

#### Jump Starting Procedure

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the power system from starting.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting a 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*Continued*


## ■ What to Do After the Power System Starts

Once your vehicle's power system has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's nut of the 12-volt battery sensor ⊖ terminal.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.


Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

## How to Handle Overheating

The  **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.

- ▶ If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### How to Handle Overheating

If the  **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** appears on the driver information interface, your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.

### If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

### If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears



■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when braking ability is reduced.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

Slow down and drive carefully. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

ⓘ If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. Restarting the power system may rapidly discharge the battery.

The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks




(Red)

### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. Pull the  deceleration paddle selector several times to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

### ■ Reasons for the indicator to blink


There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

### ▶▶ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, pull the  deceleration paddle selector to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

▶▶ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On**  
P. 651


## If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system or Driver Attention Monitor system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If  **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.



## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On



(Red)



(Amber)

■ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**

➤ **Parking Brake** P. 480

- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  - ▶ To prevent the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into **P**.
- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

☒ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

## If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- ▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 400

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

▶▶ If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

## If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

The transmission is malfunctioning.



### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks

Immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

▶ If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message

You may not be able to turn on the power system.

Make sure to set the parking brake when parking your vehicle.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

▶ **Emergency Towing** P. 662

## If the Quick Plug-in Charging System Warning Appears

---



### ■ Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when there is a problem with the quick plug-in charging system or the charging station outlet.

### ■ What to do when the warning appears

There may be a problem with the charging station outlet. Refer to the instructions provided at the station or consult a qualified technician.

If the outlet works properly, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears



### ■ Reasons for the warning to appear

- Appears when thermal runaway may be occurring in the high voltage battery.
- Immediately stop in a safe place and apply the parking brake.

### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

Immediately move away from the vehicle and contact a dealer.

⚠ If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears

## ⚠ WARNING

Do not approach the vehicle since it may emit harmful fumes. Even if the vehicle stops producing fumes, it may start again after some time.

## Fuse Locations

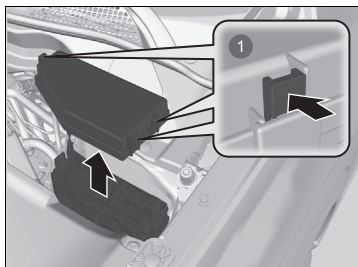
If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

### Fuse Boxes inside the Bonnet

#### Fuse box A

Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



1 Tabs

### Circuit protected and fuse rating

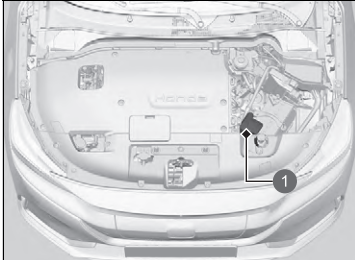
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Wiper	30 A
2		Left Light Control Module	15 A
3		SRS	10 A
4		Hazard	7.5 A
5		VBU	7.5 A
6		Audio	30 A
7		Back Up	15 A
8		MCU	20 A
9		IGB	10 A
10		QC Relay	10 A
11		ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
12		Main Fan	30 A
13		EV IGP	20 A
14		Stop	10 A
15	–	–	–
16		Right Light Control Module	15 A
17		Washer	15 A
18		Horn	10 A
19		OBC	7.5 A
20		SBW	10 A
21		EWP (DU)	10 A
22		A/C	10 A
23		Sub Fan	30 A
24		ABS/VSA FSR	40 A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
25		IGP Relay COIL+ (1)	7.5 A
26		IGP Relay COIL+ (2)	7.5 A
27	–	–	–
28		MCU 1	7.5 A
29		MCU 2	7.5 A
30		MCU 3	7.5 A
31		IGP VCU	15 A
32		ES VLV	7.5 A
33		Battery PTC	7.5 A

### ■ Fuse box B

Located near the ⊕ terminal of the 12-volt battery under the motor room cover.

Have a dealer inspect and replace the fuse.



1 Fuse Box B

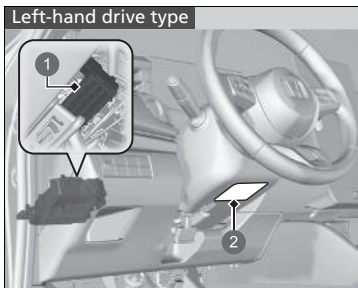
### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
a		MAIN	170 A
b		RB MAIN 1	60 A
c		RB MAIN 2	80 A
d		DCD	70 A
e		EPS	70 A
f		ESB	40 A

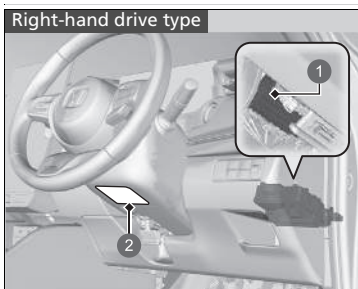
## Driver Side Interior Fuse Boxes

### Fuse box A

Located under the dashboard.



- 1 Fuse Box
- 2 Fuse Label



- 1 Fuse Box
- 2 Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

### Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Accessory	7.5 A
2		ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
3		Blind spot information System	10 A
4		IDAS Camera	7.5 A
5		OPTION	10 A
6		SRS 2	(10 A)
7		Meter	10 A
8		ESL	10 A
9		A/C	10 A
10	–	–	–
11		Wiper Relay	7.5 A
12		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13		Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14		Left Rear Power Window	20 A
15		Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16		Door Lock	20 A
17	–	–	–
18		USB Charger	10 A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
19		Super Locking*	(20 A)
20		PDS	10 A
21		SBW	10 A
22		Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23		Rear Fog Light	(10 A)
24		OPTION	10 A
25	–	–	–
26		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27		Right Rear Power Window	20 A
28		Driver's Power Window	20 A
29		Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30		Smart	10 A
31		Driver's Power Seat Sliding	20 A
32		–	(20 A)
33		Driver's Power Seat Reclining	20 A
34		ABS/VSA	10 A
35		SRS	10 A
36	–	–	–
37		Heated Steering Wheel*	(15 A)
38		Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39	–	–	–

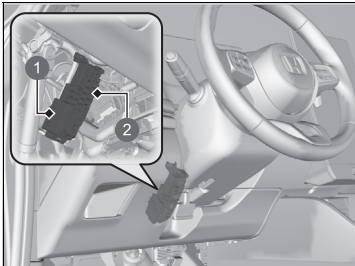


**Left-hand drive type**

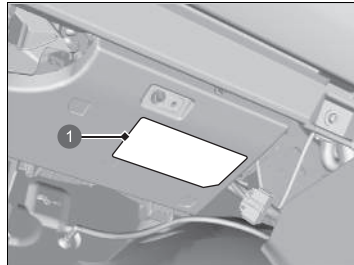
**■ Fuse box B**

Located under the dashboard.

Only the fuse No. 1 is side of the fuse box. Replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.



- ① Fuse No. 1
- ② Fuse No. 2-25



**① Fuse Label**

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the glove box. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

**■ Circuit protected and fuse rating**

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main	60 A
2		IG Main	30 A
3		IG Main 2	30 A
4		Relay Module 1	30 A
5		Relay Module 2	30 A
6		Fuse Box Main 2	40 A
7		Fuse Box Option	40 A
8		Heater Motor	30 A
9	—	—	—
10		Rear Demister	30 A
11	—	—	—
12	—	—	—
13		Power Tailgate*	(40 A)
14		—	(20 A)
15		Front Fog Lights	10 A
16		IMG	10 A
17		Audio Sub	15 A
18		Power Tailgate Closer*	(20 A)
19		Seat Heaters	(20 A)
20		Charge Lid	7.5 A
21		Battery IR	7.5 A
22		Audio AMP*	(20 A)
23		EWP(IPU)	15 A
24		Display	10 A
25		ACC Sub	7.5 A

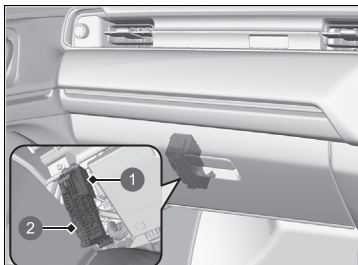
\* Not available on all models

Right-hand drive type

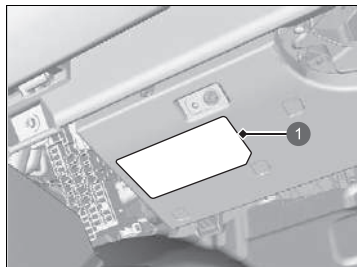
### Passenger Side Interior Fuse Box

Located under the glove box.

Only the fuse No. 1 is side of the fuse box. Replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.



- ① Fuse No. 1
- ② Fuse No. 2-25



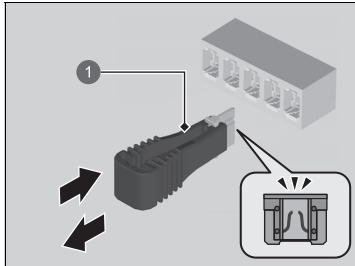
① Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main	60 A
2		IG Main	30 A
3		IG Main 2	30 A
4		Relay Module 1	30 A
5		Relay Module 2	30 A
6		Fuse Box Main 2	40 A
7		Fuse Box Option	40 A
8		Heater Motor	30 A
9	–	–	–
10		Rear Demister	30 A
11	–	–	–
12	–	–	–
13		Power Tailgate*	(40 A)
14		–	(20 A)
15		Front Fog Lights	10 A
16		IMG	10 A
17		Audio Sub	15 A
18		Power Tailgate Closer*	(20 A)
19		Seat Heaters	(20 A)
20		Charge Lid	7.5 A
21		Battery IR	7.5 A
22		Audio AMP*	(20 A)
23		EWP(IPU)	15 A
24		Display	10 A
25		ACC Sub	7.5 A

## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1 Fuse Puller

1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn the headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Inspect the small fuses inside the bonnet and the vehicle interior.
  - ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

### ▶▶ Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

➤ **Fuse Locations** P. 656

Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller in the fuse box A inside the bonnet.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

## ■ Flatbed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

## ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

## » Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.

➤ **Parking Brake** P. 480

### NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

### Right-hand drive type

Before towing your vehicle, deactivate the security system's tilt sensor if you have to set the system.

➤ **Tilt Sensor\*** P. 186

# If You Cannot Open the Charge Lid

## ■ What to Do If Unable to Open the Charge Lid

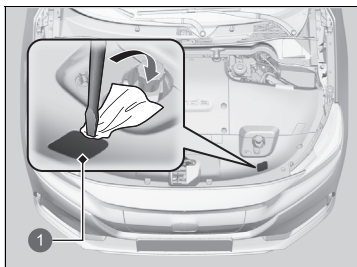
If you cannot open the charge lid, use the following procedure.

1. Open the bonnet.

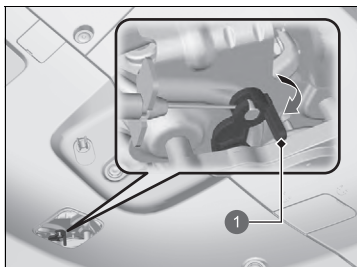
➤ **Opening the Bonnet** P. 575

2. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and open the lid on the motor room cover.

▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



1 Lid



1 Release Lever

3. Pull the release lever.

➤ **How to Charge (AC 230 V)** P. 548

➤ **How to Charge (DC)** P. 551

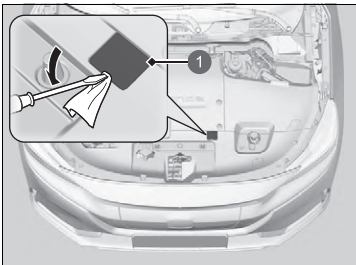
## ☒ What to Do If Unable to Open the Charge Lid

After taking this step, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

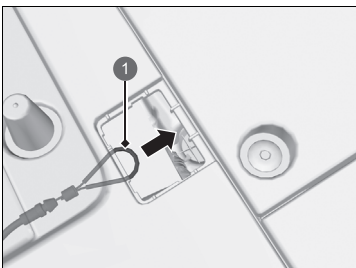
# If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector

## ■ What to Do If Unable to Disengage the Charging Connector

If you cannot disengage the charging connector, use the following procedure.



1 Lid



1 Release Cord

## ■ If the Remote Battery Is Weak

The charging connector cannot be disengaged if the door is locked while the keyless remote cannot be detected, such as when the battery is weak.

## ▣ What to Do If Unable to Disengage the Charging Connector

If the problem that you cannot disengage the charging connector occurs repeatedly, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

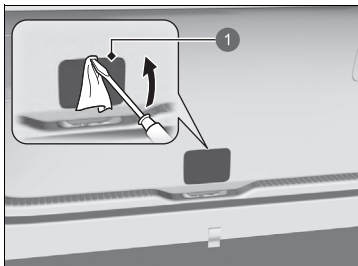
You can disengage the charging connector by pressing the release button in the inlet by unlocking the door with the built-in key.

- **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 609
- **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 641

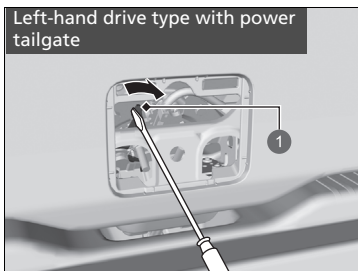
# If You Cannot Open the Tailgate

## What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1 Lid



1 Lever

1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and open the lid on the back of the tailgate.

▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

## What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

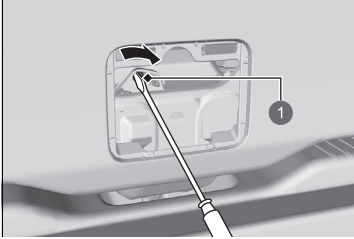
Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

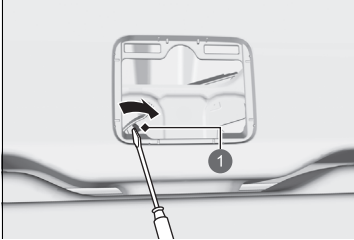


Right-hand drive type with power tailgate



① Lever

Models without power tailgate



① Lever



# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

<b>Specifications</b> .....	670
<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Motor Number, and Transmission Number .....	672
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves*</b> .....	673
<b>Open Source Licences</b>	
TCU Open Source Licence .....	684

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	e:Ny1
Curb Weight	1,655 - 1,681 kg
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb

## ■ 12-Volt Battery

Capacity	36AH(5)/45AH(20)
----------	------------------

## ■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L
---------------	-------

## ■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED
Headlights (High Beam)	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Front Fog Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	LED
Back-Up Light	LED
Rear Fog Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Charge Lights	LED
Charge Lid Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Front Map Lights	LED
Rear Map Lights*	LED
Ceiling Light*	LED
Ambient Lights	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights	LED
Centre Pocket Light	LED
Luggage Area Lights	LED

### ■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	415 - 465 g (14.6 - 16.4 oz)

### ■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

### ■ Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda BEVF-Type1	
Capacity	Change	0.34 L

### ■ Climate Control Coolant

Specified	Honda Genuine Coolant
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity in the reserve tank	0.33 L

### ■ Tyre

	Size	225/50R18 95V
Regular	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	18 x 7 1/2J

### ■ Honda TRK Air Compressor

A weighted emission sound pressure level	81 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	89 dB (A)

### ■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

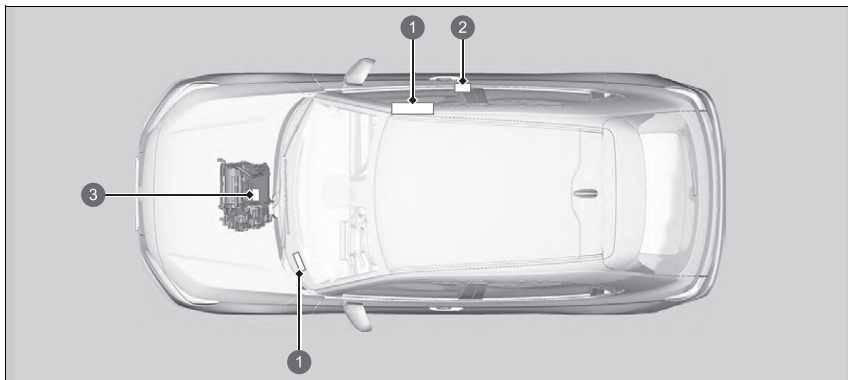
### ■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,387 mm	
Width	1,790 mm	
Height	1,584 mm	
Wheelbase	2,607 mm	
Track	Front	1,539 mm
	Rear	1,540 mm

# Identification Numbers

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Motor Number, and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.



- ① Vehicle Identification Number\*
- ② Certification Label/Vehicle Identification Number
- ③ Motor Number and Transmission Number

### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Motor Number, and Transmission Number

#### Left-hand drive type

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.





- ① Cover

# Devices that Emit Radio Waves\*



The following products and system on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

## EU Countries

BCM Keyless Access System	FOB Keyless Remote
<p><a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></p>  <p>Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [41580430] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="https://continental-homologation.com/honda">https://continental-homologation.com/honda</a> Intended use: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH LF Frequency band: 125KHz RF Frequency band: 433.92MHz Maximum transmitted output: 10mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>	<p><a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></p>  <p>Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [TP_4] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="https://continental-homologation.com/honda">https://continental-homologation.com/honda</a> Intended use: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH LF Frequency band: 125KHz RF Frequency band: 433.92MHz Maximum transmitted output: 1mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>

\* Not available on all models

EU Countries

Hands-Free Telephone System	Blind spot information system/Cross Traffic Monitor
<p><a href="http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/">http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/</a></p>	<p><a href="https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory">https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory</a></p>
	
<p>Hereby, Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type Listed above is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. Access to <a href="http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/">http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/</a>, click "Declaration of Conformity", enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC).                      Keyword: [CL-MHVCE3AD,CL-MHVCE4AD,CL-MHVCE2AD,CL-MHVCE1AD] You can see "Ref No" in unit label.                      Intended use: Car Audio System (Bluetooth and WLAN)                      Postal address:                      4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan                      Manufacturer name: Panasonic Corporation                      Operational frequency band:                      Specifications of Bluetooth                      Frequency band : 2402-2480MHz                      Specifications of 2.4GHz WLAN                      Frequency band : 2412-2472MHz                      Maximum Output Power:                      Specifications of Bluetooth                      Maximum output power : 0.1dBm                      Specifications of 2.4GHz WLAN                      Maximum output power : 11.9dBm                      Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office                      Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>	<p>Hereby, [Veoneer US, Inc.] declares that the radio equipment type NB24G175V3 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:  <a href="https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory">https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory</a>                      Intended use: blind spot information                      Postal address:                      26360 American Drive Southfield, Michigan, 48034                      United States of America                      Manufacturer name: Veoneer US, LLC                      Operational frequency band:                      24.05 – 24.25 GHz                      Maximum Output Power:                      13 dBm peak eirp                      Importer Name:                      Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office                      Postal address:                      Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>



## EU Countries

## Telematics Control Unit

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/>



Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/>

Intended use: Telematics and Wi-Fi Hotspot device for Vehicle

Postal address:

1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661, Japan

Manufacturer name: DENSO CORPORATION

Operational frequency band: Model OGEY10

- 1) GSM900 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz)
- 2) GSM1800 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz)
- 3) WCDMA Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980 MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz)
- 4) WCDMA Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz)
- 5) LTE Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz)
- 6) LTE Band3 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz)
- 7) LTE Band7 (Tx: 2500-2570 MHz, Rx: 2620-2690 MHz)
- 8) LTE Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz)
- 9) LTE Band20 (Tx: 832-862 MHz, Rx: 791-821 MHz)
- 10) WLAN IEEE802.11b (Tx/Rx: 2412-2462 MHz)
- 11) WLAN IEEE802.11g (Tx/Rx: 2412-2462 MHz)
- 12) WLAN IEEE802.11n (Tx/Rx: 2412-2462 MHz)
- 13) GPS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)
- 14) GALILEO (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)
- 15) EGNOS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)


Maximum Output Power:

1) 2 W 2) 1 W 3-4) 0.25 W 5)-9) 0.20 W 10) 0.032 W 11),12) 0.016 W

Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office

Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

EU Countries

Digital Key	Wireless Charger
<p><a href="https://continental-homologation.com/honda">https://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></p>  <p>Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [A2C775684] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></p> <p>Intended use: Control Unit (digital key)                      Postal address: Siemensstraße 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany                      Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH                      Operational frequency band:                      BLE frequency range: 2.402GHz to 2.48GHz                      NFC Operational frequency band: 13.56 MHz                      Maximum Output Power:                      BLE Maximum Output Power: +20dBm                      NFC Maximum Output Power: 136.9 dBuA/m at &lt; 5 cm                      Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office                      Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>	<p><a href="https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc">https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc</a></p> <p>Hereby, LG Electronics Inc. declares that the radio equipment type WC500HOC121 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:  <a href="https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc">https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc</a></p> <p>Intended use: Wireless Power Charger for vehicle                      Operational frequency band:                      75kHz~118.320kHz                      Maximum Output Power:                      15W                      Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office                      Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>

## EU Countries

## Remote Tuner

<http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/>



Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type Listed above is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. Access to <http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/>, click "Declaration of Conformity", enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC). Keyword: Model No.

Keyword: [CQ-THVCE1AD]

You can see "Ref No" in unit label.

Intended use:

RADIO UNIT (Car radio tuner)

Postal address:

4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken,  
224-8520, Japan

Manufacturer name:

Panasonic Corporation

Importer Name:

Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office

Postal address:

Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

British models

<p style="text-align: center;"><b>BCM</b> Keyless Access System</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>FOB</b> Keyless Remote</p>
<p><i><a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></i></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>UK CA</b></p> <p>Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [41580430] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <i><a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></i></p> <p>Intended use: Short range device for remote control</p> <p>Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH LF Frequency band: 125KHz RF Frequency band: 433.92MHz Maximum transmitted output: 10mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>	<p><i><a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></i></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>UK CA</b></p> <p>Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [TP_4] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <i><a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></i></p> <p>Intended use: Short range device for remote control</p> <p>Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH LF Frequency band: 125KHz RF Frequency band: 433.92MHz Maximum transmitted output: 1mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>

## British models

## Hands-Free Telephone System

<https://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/>



Hereby, Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type [ \* ] is in compliance with The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017.

The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <https://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/> enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC).

Keyword: [CL-MHVCE3AD,CL-MHVCE4AD] You can see "Ref No" in unit label.

Intended use: Car Audio System (Bluetooth and WLAN)

Postal address: 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan

Manufacturer name: Panasonic Corporation

Operational frequency band:

Specifications of Bluetooth

Frequency band : 2402-2480MHz

Specifications of 2.4GHz WLAN

Frequency band : 2412-2472MHz

Maximum Output Power:

Specifications of Bluetooth

Maximum output power : 0.1dBm

Specifications of 2.4GHz WLAN

Maximum output power : 11.9dBm

Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd.

Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

British models

Telematics Control Unit

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/>



Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type is in compliance with the relevant statutory requirements. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/>

Intended use: Telematics and Wi-Fi Hotspot device for Vehicle

Postal address:

1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661, Japan

Manufacturer name: DENSO CORPORATION

Operational frequency band: Model OGEY10

- 1) GSM900 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz)
- 2) GSM1800 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz)
- 3) WCDMA Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980 MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz)
- 4) WCDMA Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz)
- 5) LTE Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz)
- 6) LTE Band3 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz)
- 7) LTE Band7 (Tx: 2500-2570 MHz, Rx: 2620-2690 MHz)
- 8) LTE Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz)
- 9) LTE Band20 (Tx: 832-862 MHz, Rx: 791-821 MHz)
- 10) WLAN IEEE802.11b (Tx/Rx: 2412-2462 MHz)
- 11) WLAN IEEE802.11g (Tx/Rx: 2412-2462 MHz)
- 12) WLAN IEEE802.11n (Tx/Rx: 2412-2462 MHz)
- 13) GPS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)
- 14) GALILEO (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)
- 15) EGNOS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)



Maximum Output Power:

- 1) 2 W 2) 1 W 3-4) 0.25 W 5)-9) 0.20 W 10) 0.032 W 11),12) 0.016 W

Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd.

Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

## British models

Blind spot information system/Cross Traffic Monitor	Digital Key
<a href="https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory">https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory</a>	<a href="https://continental-homologation.com/honda">https://continental-homologation.com/honda</a>
	
<p>Hereby, [Veoneer US, Inc.] declares that the radio equipment type NB24G175V3 is in compliance with radio regulation 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:  <a href="https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory">https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory</a>            Intended use: blind spot information            Postal address:            26360 American Drive Southfield, Michigan, 48034            United States of America            Manufacturer name: Veoneer US, LLC            Operational frequency band:            24.05 – 24.25 GHz            Maximum Output Power:            13 dBm peak eirp            Importer Name:            Honda Motor Europe Ltd.            Postal address:            Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>	<p>Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [A2C775684] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a>            Intended use: Control Unit (digital key)            Postal address: Siemensstraße 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany            Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH            Operational frequency band:            BLE frequency range: 2.402GHz to 2.48GHz            NFC Operational frequency band: 13.56 MHz            Maximum Output Power:            BLE Maximum Output Power: +20dBm            NFC Maximum Output Power: 136.9 dBuA/m at &lt; 5 cm            Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd.            Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>

British models

Wireless Charger

<https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc>

Hereby, LG Electronics declares that the radio equipment type wireless charger is in compliance with the relevant statutory requirements. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address : <http://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc>

(Input the model name : WC500HOC121)

Intended use:

Wireless Power Charger for vehicle

Postal address:

128, Yeoui-daero, Yeongdeungpo-gu, Seoul, Korea

Operational frequency band:

111kHz/max power : 42dBuA/m @10m

Maximum Output Power:

111kHz/max power : 42dBuA/m @10m

Importer Name:

Honda Motor Europe Ltd.

Postal address:

Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom



## British models

## Remote Tuner

<https://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/>



Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type [ \* ] is in compliance with The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/>

enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC).

Keyword: Model No.

Keyword: [CQ-THVCE1AD] You can see "Ref No" in unit label.

Intended use:

Radio unit (Car radio tuner)

Postal address:

4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan

Manufacturer name:

Panasonic Corporation

Importer Name:

Honda Motor Europe Ltd.

Postal address:

Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

## TCU Open Source Licence

---

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).

The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

*<https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/>*

## Numbers

<b>12-Volt Battery</b> .....	604
12-Volt Battery Charging System	
Indicator .....	109, 648
Maintenance	
(Checking the 12-Volt Battery) .....	604
Maintenance (Replacing) .....	606

## A

<b>ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)</b> .....	487
Indicator .....	112
<b>Accessories and Modifications</b> .....	621
<b>Accessory Power Socket</b> .....	232
<b>Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System</b> .....	394
<b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow</b> .....	424
<b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)</b> .....	118
<b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)</b> .....	118
<b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator</b> .....	118
<b>Adding</b>	
Climate Control Coolant .....	586
Washer .....	589
<b>Adjusting</b>	
Armrest .....	220
Front Seats .....	210
Head Restraints .....	217

Headlights .....	197
Mirrors .....	207
Sound .....	276
Steering Wheel .....	206
<b>Agile Handling Assist</b> .....	397
<b>Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System)</b> .....	240
Air Outlet .....	248
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows .....	244
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	612
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode .....	243
Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning .....	246
Sensor .....	250
Synchronization Mode .....	245
Using Automatic Climate Control .....	240
<b>Air Outlet</b> .....	248
<b>Air Pressure</b> .....	598, 671
<b>Airbags</b> .....	59
After a Collision .....	61
Airbag Care .....	73
Event Data Recorder .....	1
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	61
Indicator .....	71, 112
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator .....	64
Sensors .....	59
Side Airbags .....	67
Side Curtain Airbags .....	69
<b>Android Auto</b> .....	308
<b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> .....	487
Indicator .....	112

<b>App Shortcut Function</b> .....	267
<b>Apple CarPlay</b> .....	302
<b>Armrest</b> .....	220
<b>Audio Remote Controls</b> .....	258
<b>Audio System</b> .....	252, 254
Adjusting the Sound .....	276
Android Auto .....	308
App Shortcut Function .....	267
Apple CarPlay .....	302
Audio Remote Controls .....	258
Audio System Function .....	255
Audio/Information Screen .....	264
Basic Operation .....	255
Bluetooth® Audio .....	297
Clock Setup .....	273
DAB .....	288
Display Setup .....	277
Error Messages .....	357
EV Menu .....	312
FM Radio .....	283
General Information .....	358
How to Update .....	278
How to Update Wirelessly .....	281
How to Update with a USB Device .....	282
iPod .....	291
Limitations for Manual Operation ....	272, 344
MP3/WMA/AAC/FLAC/PCM/WAVE .....	293
MP4/AVI/MKV/ASF/WMV .....	293
On-Board Owner's Manual .....	260
Power Flow .....	317
Radio Data System (RDS) .....	286

Reactivating.....	253
Recommended Devices .....	358
Security Code .....	253
Selecting an Audio Source .....	272
Start Up.....	254
Status Area.....	271
System Updates .....	278
System Updates Settings.....	279
Theft Protection.....	253
USB Flash Drives .....	293, 358
USB Ports.....	256
Voice Control Operation .....	261
Wallpaper Setup.....	274
Wi-Fi Connection.....	300
<b>Audio System Theft Protection .....</b>	<b>253</b>
<b>Audio/Information Screen.....</b>	<b>264</b>
<b>Auto High-Beam .....</b>	<b>198</b>
Indicator.....	116
<b>Automatic Brake Hold.....</b>	<b>484</b>
Indicator.....	108, 485
System Indicator .....	108, 484
<b>Automatic Folding Door Mirror</b>	
Function.....	209
<b>Automatic Intermittent Wipers .....</b>	<b>202</b>
<b>Average Energy Consumption .....</b>	<b>142</b>
<b>Average Speed.....</b>	<b>144</b>

## B

### Battery

12-Volt Battery Charging System	
Indicator.....	109, 648
Charging.....	544
Energy Economy.....	560
High Voltage .....	559
If the 12-Volt Battery is Dead.....	644
Safety Checklist.....	544
<b>Belts (Seat) .....</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>Beverage Holders .....</b>	<b>225</b>
<b>Blind spot information System .....</b>	<b>402</b>
<b>Bluetooth® Audio .....</b>	<b>297</b>
<b>Booster Seats (For Children) .....</b>	<b>99</b>
<b>Brake Assist System .....</b>	<b>488</b>
<b>Brake System .....</b>	<b>480</b>
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	487
Automatic Brake Hold .....	484
Brake Assist System .....	488
Fluid.....	588
Foot Brake.....	483
Indicator.....	106, 107, 108, 649, 651
Parking Brake .....	480
<b>Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)....</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>Bulb Replacement .....</b>	<b>590</b>
Back-Up Lights .....	591
Brake Lights .....	590
Charge Lid Light.....	592
Charge Lights.....	591
Daytime Running Lights.....	590
Front Fog Lights .....	590

Front Turn Signal Lights .....	590
Headlights .....	590
High-Mount Brake Light.....	591
Position Lights.....	590
Rear Fog Light.....	591
Rear Licence Plate Light.....	591
Rear Turn Signal Lights.....	590
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator	
Lights.....	590
Taillights .....	590, 591
<b>Bulb Specifications.....</b>	<b>670</b>

## C

<b>Carrying Luggage .....</b>	<b>373, 375</b>
<b>Certification Label .....</b>	<b>672</b>
<b>Changing Bulbs .....</b>	<b>590</b>
<b>Charge Timer Setting.....</b>	<b>554</b>
<b>Charging.....</b>	<b>544</b>
AC Charger .....	545
CCS2 DC charger.....	545
Charge Indicator (Vehicle Side).....	553
DC Charge.....	551
High Voltage Battery.....	559
Timer .....	554
Unable to Disengage the Charging	
Connector.....	664

<b>Child Restraint System</b> .....	74	<b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> .....	411	<b>Door Mirrors</b> .....	208
Booster Seats .....	99	<b>Console Box</b> .....	224	<b>Doors</b> .....	158
Child Restraint System for Infants .....	77	<b>Controls</b> .....	157	Door and Tailgate Open Message .....	44
Child Restraint System for Small Children .....	79	<b>Cooling System</b> .....	581	Keys .....	158
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt .....	94	Coolant .....	581	Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	168
Larger Children .....	98	Overheating .....	647	Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	161
Rearward Facing Child Restraint System ....	77	<b>Creeping (Transmission)</b> .....	381	Lockout Prevention System .....	167
Selecting a Child Restraint System .....	80	<b>Cross Traffic Monitor</b> .....	498	<b>Drive Mode Switch</b> .....	391
Using a Tether .....	96	<b>Customize Display</b> .....	154	<b>Driver Attention Monitor</b> .....	147
<b>Child Safety</b> .....	74	<b>Customized Features</b> .....	321	<b>Driver Information Interface</b> .....	139
Childproof Door Locks .....	170			Switching the Display .....	139
<b>Childproof Door Locks</b> .....	170	<b>D</b>		<b>Driving</b> .....	371
<b>Cleaning the Exterior</b> .....	617	<b>DAB</b> .....	288	Braking .....	480
<b>Cleaning the Interior</b> .....	614	<b>Daytime Running Lights</b> .....	196	Transmission .....	381
<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	240	<b>Dead 12-Volt Battery</b> .....	644	Turning on the Power .....	377
Air Outlet .....	248	<b>Deceleration Paddle Selector</b> .....	388	<b>Dust and Pollen Filter</b> .....	612
Changing the Mode .....	240	Indicator .....	110		
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows .....	244	<b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> .....	340	<b>E</b>	
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	612	<b>Deflation Warning System</b> .....	398	<b>eCall Indicator</b> .....	366
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode .....	243	Calibration .....	400	<b>Elapsed Time</b> .....	144
Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning .....	246	Indicator .....	114, 652	<b>Electric Power Steering (EPS) System</b>	
Sensors .....	250	<b>Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows</b> .....	244	Indicator .....	113, 650
Synchronization Mode .....	245	<b>Demister</b> .....	204	<b>Electric Vehicle Precautions</b> .....	17
Using Automatic Climate Control .....	240	<b>Devices that Emits Radio Waves</b> .....	673	<b>Electronic Gear Selector</b> .....	31
<b>Clock Setup</b> .....	273	<b>Dimming</b>		<b>Emergency Call (eCall)</b> .....	366
<b>CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System)</b> .....	411	Headlights .....	192	Automatic Emergency Call .....	366
<b>Coat Hooks</b> .....	226	Rearview Mirror .....	207	Manual Emergency Call .....	368
		<b>Display Setup</b> .....	277	<b>Emergency Stop Signal</b> .....	489

Emergency Towing .....	662
Energy Economy .....	560
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System.....	650
Indicator .....	113
EV Menu .....	312
Exterior Care (Cleaning) .....	617
Exterior Mirrors.....	208

## F

Features.....	251
Filter	
Dust and Pollen .....	612
Flat Tyre.....	625
Floor Mat.....	615
Fluids	
Brake.....	588
Climate Control.....	585
Cooling System.....	581
Windscreen Washer.....	589
FM Radio .....	283
Fog Lights.....	195
Folding Down the Rear Seats.....	214
Foot Brake.....	483
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	61
Front Fog Light Indicator .....	116
Front Seat Heaters.....	237
Front Seats .....	210
Adjusting.....	211
Front Wide View Camera .....	478

Fuses.....	656
Inspecting and Changing.....	661
Locations.....	656, 657, 658, 659, 660

## G

Gauges .....	137
Glass (care).....	615, 618
Glove Box.....	224

## H

Hands-Free Telephone System .....	341
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History.....	350
Automatic Transferring.....	349
Favourite Contacts .....	351
HFT Buttons .....	341
HFT Menus.....	345
HFT Status Display.....	343
Limitations for Manual Operation .....	344
Making a Call.....	353
Options During a Call .....	356
Phone Setup.....	347
Receiving a Call .....	355
Ringtone .....	349
Hazard Warning Button .....	6
Head Restraints .....	217
Headlights.....	192
Adjuster .....	197
Aiming.....	590

Auto High-Beam .....	198
Dimming.....	192
Operating .....	192
Heated Door Mirror Button .....	204
Heated Steering Wheel .....	236
Heaters (Front Seat).....	237
High Beam Indicator.....	116
High Beams .....	193
High Voltage Battery.....	559
Charging .....	544
Energy Economy .....	560
Gauge .....	137
Hill Start Assist System.....	379
Honda Parking Pilot.....	518
Honda Sensing .....	33, 407

## I

Identification Numbers.....	672
Motor and Transmission.....	672
Vehicle Identification.....	672
If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector .....	664
If You Cannot Open the Charge Lid .....	663
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate .....	666
Illumination Control .....	205
Immobilizer System.....	182
Indicator .....	117

<b>Indicators</b> .....	104	<b>NORMAL Mode</b> .....	110, 391	<b>Interior Rearview Mirror</b> .....	207
12-Volt Battery Charging System ....	109, 648	<b>Parking Brake and Brake System</b>		<b>iPod</b> .....	291
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed		(Amber) .....	108, 651		
Follow (Amber) .....	118	<b>Parking Brake and Brake System</b>		<b>J</b>	
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed		(Red).....	106, 107, 649, 651	<b>Jacking Points</b> .....	638
Follow (White/Green) .....	118	<b>Parking Sensor</b> .....	116	<b>Jump Starting</b> .....	644
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed		<b>Passenger Front Airbag ON/OFF</b> .....	112		
Follow Interval.....	118	<b>Power System</b> .....	108	<b>K</b>	
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	112	<b>Ready</b> .....	109	<b>Key Number Tag</b> .....	159
Auto High-Beam .....	116	<b>Rear Fog Light</b> .....	116	<b>Keyless Lockout Prevention</b> .....	167
Automatic Brake Hold.....	108, 485	<b>Road Departure Mitigation (Amber)</b> .....	120	<b>Keys</b> .....	158
Automatic Brake Hold System .....	108, 484	<b>Road Departure Mitigation (Grey)</b> .....	121	Lockout Prevention.....	167
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)		<b>Road Departure Mitigation System Steering</b>		Number Tag .....	159
(Amber) .....	120	Assist Auto OFF .....	120	Rear Door Won't Open.....	170
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)		<b>Safety Support (Amber)</b> .....	121	Remote Transmitter.....	165
(Grey).....	120	<b>Safety Support (Green/Grey)</b> .....	123	Types and Functions.....	158
Deceleration Paddle Selector .....	110	<b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> .....	111		
ECON Mode .....	110, 391	<b>Security System Alarm</b> .....	117	<b>L</b>	
Electric Power Steering (EPS)		<b>Shift Position</b> .....	109	<b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> .....	441
System .....	113, 650	<b>SPORT Mode</b> .....	110, 391	<b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator</b>	
Front Fog Light .....	116	<b>Supplemental Restraint System</b> .....	112	(Amber) .....	119
High Beam .....	116	<b>System Message</b> .....	115	<b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator</b>	
Immobilizer System .....	117	<b>Transmission System</b> .....	109, 653	(White/Green) .....	119
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)		<b>Turn Signal and Hazard Warning</b> .....	115	<b>Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android</b>	
(Amber) .....	119	<b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF</b> .....	113	Auto .....	364
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)		<b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System</b> .....	113	<b>Lights</b> .....	192, 590
(White/Green) .....	119	<b>Instant Energy Consumption</b> .....	142	Bulb Replacement .....	590
Lights On .....	116	<b>Instrument Panel</b> .....	103	High Beam Indicator.....	116
Low Charge (Amber).....	111	Brightness Control.....	205	Interior .....	221
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning		<b>Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	221		
System .....	114, 652	<b>Interior Lights</b> .....	221		

Light Switches .....	192
Lights On Indicator .....	116
Luggage Area Lights .....	223
<b>Load Limits</b> .....	375
<b>Locking/Unlocking</b> .....	158
Childproof Door Locks .....	170
From Inside .....	168
From Outside .....	161
Keys .....	158
Using a Key .....	166
<b>Lockout Prevention System</b> .....	167
<b>Low Battery Charge</b> .....	648
<b>Low Beams</b> .....	192
<b>Low Charge Indicator (Amber)</b> .....	111
<b>Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength</b> .....	160
<b>Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator</b> .....	114, 652
<b>Lower Anchorages</b> .....	90
<b>Luggage (Load Limit)</b> .....	375
<b>Luggage Area Cover</b> .....	230
<b>Luggage Area Lights</b> .....	223, 670
<b>Luggage Hook</b> .....	227

## M

<b>Maintenance</b> .....	561
12-Volt Battery .....	604
Brake Fluid .....	588
Cleaning .....	614
Climate Control .....	611
Climate Control Coolant .....	585

Cooling System .....	581
Precautions .....	562
Remote Transmitter .....	609
Replacing Light Bulbs .....	590
Safety .....	563
Service Reminder System .....	566
Transmission Fluid .....	584
Tyres .....	598
Under the Bonnet .....	574
Washer .....	589
Wiper .....	593
<b>Making Good Use of Your Honda Electric Vehicle</b> .....	14
<b>Map Light Switches</b> .....	222
<b>Maximum Charge Setting</b> .....	556
<b>Maximum Permissible Weight</b> .....	375, 670
<b>Meters, Gauges</b> .....	137
<b>Mirrors</b> .....	207
Door .....	208
Interior Rearview .....	207
<b>Modifications (and Accessories)</b> .....	621
<b>Motor</b> .....	
Coolant .....	581
Number .....	672
<b>Motor Room Cover</b> .....	577
<b>MP3/WMA/AAC/FLAC/PCM/WAVE</b> .....	293
<b>MP4/AVI/MKV/ASF/WMV</b> .....	293
<b>Multi-View Camera</b> .....	504
<b>Multi-View Rear Camera</b> .....	502

## N

<b>Navigation</b> .....	145
<b>NORMAL Mode Indicator</b> .....	110
<b>Numbers (Identification)</b> .....	672

## O

<b>Odometer</b> .....	137
<b>On-Board Owner's Manual</b> .....	260
Open the Owner's Manual .....	260
<b>Open Source Licences</b> .....	359, 684
<b>Opening/Closing</b> .....	
Bonnet .....	575
Power Windows .....	188
Tailgate .....	171
<b>Other Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	232
<b>Outside Temperature Display</b> .....	138
<b>Overheating</b> .....	647

## P

<b>Parking Brake</b> .....	480
<b>Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)</b> .....	108, 651
<b>Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)</b> .....	106, 107, 649, 651
<b>Parking Sensor Indicator</b> .....	116, 495
<b>Parking Sensor System</b> .....	491
<b>Passenger Front Airbag Off System</b> .....	64
<b>Passenger Front Airbag ON/OFF Indicator</b> .....	112



Passing Indicators.....	193
Phone.....	144
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio.....	297
POWER Button.....	190
Power Flow.....	317
Power System	
Turning on.....	377
Power System Indicator.....	108
Power Tailgate.....	173
Power Windows.....	188
POWER/CHARGE Gauge.....	137
Precautions While Driving.....	380
Rain.....	381
Pregnant Women.....	56
Puncture (Tyre).....	625

## R

Radio (FM).....	283
Radio Data System (RDS).....	286
Range.....	137
RDS (Radio Data System).....	286
Ready Indicator.....	109
Rear Demister.....	204
Rear Fog Light Indicator.....	116
Rear Seat Reminder.....	215
Rear Seats.....	214
Rear Sunshades.....	238
Rearview Mirror.....	207
Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking.....	20

Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning.....	246
Remote Transmitter.....	165
Replacement	
12-Volt Battery.....	606
Bulbs.....	590
Fuses.....	656, 658, 659, 660, 661
Rear Wiper Blade Rubber.....	596
Remote Battery.....	609
Wiper Blade Rubber.....	593
Resetting a Trip Meter.....	142
Road Departure Mitigation.....	463
On and Off.....	466

## S

Safe Driving.....	39
Safety Labels.....	101
Safety Message.....	0
Safety Support.....	152
Safety Support Indicator (Amber) ...	121, 122
Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)....	123
Seat Belts.....	45
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage.....	53
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners.....	50
Checking.....	57
Fastening.....	51
Installing a Child Restraint System	
with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt.....	94
Pregnant Women.....	56
Reminder.....	48
Warning Indicator.....	48, 111

Seat Heaters.....	237
Seats.....	210
Adjusting.....	210
Front Seat Heaters.....	237
Front Seats.....	210
Rear Seats.....	214
Security System.....	182
Immobilizer System Indicator.....	117
Security System Alarm Indicator.....	117
Super Locking.....	187
Tilt Sensor.....	186
Ultrasonic Sensors.....	185
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	80
Selecting the Desired Air Outlet.....	248
Service Reminder System.....	566
Shift Button.....	382
Operation.....	384
Shift Position Indicator.....	109
Shifting (Transmission).....	382
Shoulder Anchorage.....	53
Side Airbags.....	67
Side Curtain Airbags.....	69
SOS Button.....	368
SOS Cancel Button.....	368
Specifications.....	670
Speed Alarm.....	146
Speed/Distance Units.....	153
Speedometer.....	137
SPORT Mode Indicator.....	110
SRS Airbags (Airbags).....	61
Indicator.....	112

Steering Wheel .....	206
Adjusting .....	206
Stopping .....	490
Storage Items .....	224
Sun Visor .....	239
Super Locking .....	187
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) .....	61
Indicator .....	112
Switches	
(Around the Steering Wheel).....	6, 7, 8, 190
System Message Indicator .....	115
System Updates .....	278

## T

Tailgate .....	171
TCU Open Source Licence .....	684
Temperature	
Outside Temperature Display .....	138
Temperature Sensor .....	138
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre .....	625
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) .....	625
Tie-down Anchorages .....	227
Tilt Sensor .....	186
Timer .....	554
Tools .....	624
Towing Your Vehicle	
Emergency .....	662
Traffic Jam Assist .....	453
Traffic Sign Recognition System .....	471

Transmission .....	381, 382
Creeping .....	381
Fluid .....	584
Indicator .....	109
Number .....	672
Operating the Shift Button .....	384
Shift Position Indicator .....	109, 384
Warning Message .....	653
Trip Meter .....	142, 144
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) .....	625
Troubleshooting .....	36, 623
12-Volt Battery Is Dead .....	644
Blown Fuse .....	656, 658, 659, 660, 661
Brake Pedal Vibrates .....	36
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door .....	37
Charge Lid Won't Open .....	663
Charging Connector Won't Disengage .....	664
Emergency Towing .....	662
Noise When Braking .....	38
Overheating .....	647
Power System Won't Start .....	639
Puncture (Flat Tyre) .....	625
Rear Door Won't Open .....	36, 170
Tailgate Won't Open .....	666
Warning Indicators .....	104
Turn Signals .....	193
Indicators (Instrument Panel) .....	115
Turning on the Power .....	377
Does Not Activate .....	639

Tyres .....	598
Air Pressure .....	671
Checking and Maintaining .....	598
Inspection .....	598
Puncture (Flat Tyre) .....	625
Rotation .....	601
Tyre Chains .....	602
Wear Indicators .....	599
Winter .....	602

## U

Ultrasonic Sensors .....	185
Unlocking the Doors .....	161
Unlocking the Front Doors	
from the Inside .....	168
USB Flash Drives .....	293, 358
USB Ports .....	256

## V

Vanity Mirrors .....	11
Vehicle Identification Numbers .....	672
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) .....	395
OFF Button .....	396
OFF Indicator .....	113
System Indicator .....	113

<b>Voice Control Operation</b> .....	261	<b>Winter Tyres</b> .....	602
Audio Commands.....	262	Tyre Chains .....	602
General Commands.....	262	<b>Wipers and Washers</b> .....	201
List Commands.....	263	Automatic Intermittent Wipers.....	202
Navigation Commands.....	263	Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades .....	593
Phone Commands .....	262	Front .....	201
Standard Commands .....	263	Rear .....	203
Voice Portal Screen .....	262	<b>Wireless Charger</b> .....	233
Voice Recognition .....	261	<b>WMA</b> .....	293
<b>VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)</b> .....	395	<b>Worn Tyres</b> .....	598

## **W**

<b>Wallpaper</b> .....	274
<b>Warning and Information Message</b> .....	124
<b>Warning Indicator On/Blinking</b> .....	648
<b>Warning Labels</b> .....	101
<b>Watts</b> .....	670
<b>Wear Indicators (Tyre)</b> .....	599
<b>Wi-Fi Connection</b> .....	300
<b>Window Washers</b> .....	201
Adding/Refilling Fluid .....	589
Switch .....	201
<b>Windows (Opening and Closing)</b> .....	188
<b>Windscreen</b> .....	201
Cleaning .....	615, 618
Defrosting/Defogging .....	204, 244
Washer Fluid.....	589
Wiper Blades.....	593
Wipers and Washers .....	201





